














PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.




# SautinSoft Namespace

Starting from 2002 we are developing .Net components to do all what you wish with documents in PDF, DOCX, RTF, HTML, Images and other formats.





## ▲ Classes



	Class	Description
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis</a>	Main class of the PDF Metamorphosis .Net. Allows to export Text, RTF, DOCX, DOC and HTML to PDF; split and merge PDF documents.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters</a>	Class to create a custom header and footer in produced PDF document in any of formats: Rtf, Html or Text.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis HtmlSetting</a>	Set options necessary for HTML to PDF conversion, such as BaseUrl etc.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting</a>	Set different page properties. For example, set page size, margins, page numbers and add watermarks on page.

	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins</a>	Set page margins in inches or mm.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers</a>	Allows to set page numbers and their properties in PDF.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageSizes</a>	Set page size of produced PDF document.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity</a>	Contains details for encrypting and access permissions for a PDF document, such as Password, Permissions etc.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting</a>	Set properties for resulting PDF document, such as PDF version, compression etc.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis Sizes</a>	Class to set the component's options in inches, mm and pixels.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting</a>	Set a single font face, size, color and alignment for all text in PDF document.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Alignments</a>	Set a single text alignment for all text in PDF document. Default option: <a href="#">Auto</a> .
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis</a>	Set a single custom font

	TextSetting FontFaces	for a whole text in PDF document. Default option: <a href="#">Auto</a> .
	PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale	Allows to scale some text properties (the scaling of FontSize and TextWidth appears in future)
	PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark	Allows to add watermarks into a produced PDF document
	PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarksCollection	Allows operate with watermarks in PDF document

## └ Enumerations

	Enumeration	Description
	PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters InputFormat	Allows you to specify the input format for header and footer.
	PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Orientations	Set a page orientation of PDF document.
	PdfMetamorphosis PdfEncryptionAlgorithm	Specifies the encryption algorithm to use for encrypting a PDF document.
	PdfMetamorphosis PdfPermissions	Specifies the operations that are allowed to a user on an

		encrypted PDF document.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting PdfVersions</a>	Allows to set PDF version
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PagesPreset</a>	page types to place watermark.

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Class

Main class of the PDF Metamorphosis .Net. Allows to export Text, RTF, DOCX, DOC and HTML to PDF; split and merge PDF documents.

## ▲ Inheritance Hierarchy [System Object](#) [SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis](#)

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll) Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax


C#    VB

```
public class PdfMetamorphosis
```

[Copy](#)


The [PdfMetamorphosis](#) type exposes the following members.







## ▲ Constructors

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis</a>	Initializes a new instance of the <a href="#">SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis</a> class

[Top](#)





## ▲ Properties











	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Exception</a>	Get exception details in case of converting failed












	<a href="#">HtmlSettings</a>	Set options necessary for HTML to PDF conversion, such as BaseUrl etc.
	<a href="#">PageSettings</a>	Set page properties: page size, orientation, margins, page numbers etc
	<a href="#">PdfSettings</a>	Set properties for resulting PDF document, such as PDF version, compression etc.
	<a href="#">Serial</a>	<b>Obsolete.</b> Property to activate your copy, the same as method <a href="#">SetSerial</a>
	<a href="#">TextSettings</a>	Allows to set text properties: font face, size, colors, image quality and other conversion options
	<a href="#">WaterMarks</a>	Add waterMarks in PDF document.

[Top](#)







## ▲ Methods

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">DocToPdfConvertByte</a>	Convert the array of bytes with DOC document to a PDF bytes array.
	<a href="#">DocToPdfConvertFile</a>	Converts DOC file to PDF file.
	<a href="#">DocToPdfConvertStream</a>	Convert the stream with DOC document to a PDF stream.
	<a href="#">DocxToPdfConvertByte</a>	Convert the array of bytes with DOCX document to a PDF bytes array.

	<a href="#">DocxToPdfConvertFile</a>	Converts DOCX file to PDF file.
	<a href="#">DocxToPdfConvertStream</a>	Convert the stream with DOCX document to a PDF stream.
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<a href="#">HtmlToPdfConvertByte</a>	Converts array of HTML bytes into array of PDF bytes.
	<a href="#">HtmlToPdfConvertFile</a>	Converts HTML file or URL to PDF file. Output file will be overwritten.
	<a href="#">HtmlToPdfConvertFileToByte</a>	Converts HTML file or URL into array of PDF bytes.
	<a href="#">HtmlToPdfConvertStream</a>	Convert the stream with HTML document to a PDF stream.
	<a href="#">HtmlToPdfConvertStringToByte</a>	Converts HTML string into array of PDF bytes. Don't forget to set the property <a href="#">BaseUrl</a> to see images in output PDF file.

	<a href="#">HtmlToPdfConvertStringToFile</a>	Converts HTML string to PDF file. Don't forget to set the property <a href="#">BaseUrl</a> to see images in output PDF file.
	<a href="#">MergePDFFileArrayToPDFFile</a>	Merge several PDF files into a single PDF file
	<a href="#">MergePDFFileArrayToPDFStream</a>	Merge several PDF files into a single document as byte stream
	<a href="#">MergePDFFileToPDFFile</a>	Merge two PDF files. Merge File1Path and DestFile file into a single DestFile.
	<a href="#">MergePDFStreamArrayToPDFStream</a>	Merge several PDF documents into a single document in memory
	<a href="#">PrintPdf(String)</a>	Print the PDF file using the default printer
	<a href="#">PrintPdf(String, Int32, Int32)</a>	Print the PDF file using the default printer with time settings
	<a href="#">RtfToPdfConvertByte</a>	Converts array of RTF bytes into array of PDF bytes.
	<a href="#">RtfToPdfConvertFile</a>	Converts a RTF file to PDF file.
	<a href="#">RtfToPdfConvertFileToByte</a>	Converts RTF file into array of PDF bytes.
	<a href="#">RtfToPdfConvertStream</a>	Convert the stream with RTF document to a PDF stream.



	<a href="#">RtfToPdfConvertStringToByte</a>	Converts RTF string into array of PDF bytes.
	<a href="#">RtfToPdfConvertStringToFile</a>	Converts RTF string to PDF file.
	<a href="#">SetLicense</a>	<p>Activate your copy after purchasing or use temporary license for delete trial message. ATTENTION: specify this property first of all before creating the instance of PDF Metamorphosis!</p> <p>Use it when you got own license. We offer two license types:</p> <p>Permanent license from <a href="#">sautinsoft.com</a> and</p> <p>Temporary license from <a href="#">start-for-free</a>.</p> <p>Have question? Ask us: <a href="mailto:support@sautinsoft.com">support@sautinsoft.com</a>.</p>
	<a href="#">SetSerial</a>	<p><b>Obsolete.</b></p> <p>Method for activation of your copy, doesn't work in trial version. The method works the same as <a href="#">Serial</a> property</p>
	<a href="#">SplitPDFFileToPDFFolder</a>	Splits PDF document by pages
	<a href="#">TextToPdfConvertByte</a>	Converts array of Text bytes into array of PDF

bytes.



[TextToPdfConvertFile](#)

Converts a Text file to PDF file.



[TextToPdfConvertStream](#)

Convert the stream with Text document to a PDF stream.



[TextToPdfConvertStringToByte](#)

Converts string of Text into array of PDF bytes.



**ToString**

Returns a string that represents the current object.  
(Inherited from **Object**)

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Constructor

Initializes a new instance of the [SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis](#) class

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)








Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Properties

The [PdfMetamorphosis](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Exception</a>	Get exception details in case of converting failed
	<a href="#">HtmlSettings</a>	Set options necessary for HTML to PDF conversion, such as BaseUrl etc.
	<a href="#">PageSettings</a>	Set page properties: page size, orientation, margins, page numbers etc
	<a href="#">PdfSettings</a>	Set properties for resulting PDF document, such as PDF version, compression etc.
	<a href="#">Serial</a>	<b>Obsolete.</b> Property to activate your copy, the same as method <a href="#">SetSerial</a>
	<a href="#">TextSettings</a>	Allows to set text properties: font face, size, colors, image quality and other conversion options
	<a href="#">WaterMarks</a>	Add waterMarks in PDF document.

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Exception Property

Get exception details in case of converting failed

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▴ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public Exception Exception { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

**Exception** ▴ **See Also**

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Html Settings Property

Set options necessary for HTML to PDF conversion, such as BaseUrl etc.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis HtmlSetting  
HtmlSettings { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis HtmlSetting](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Settings Property

Set page properties: page size, orientation, margins, page numbers etc

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting
PageSettings { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting](#)

## ▲ Example

How to convert Text file to PDF file in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
```



```

static void Main(string[] args)
{
    // Activate your license here
    //
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890");

    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

    // Let's set: A4, Landscape
orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
    p.PageSettings.Size.A4();
    p.PageSettings.Orientation =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Landscape;

p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5f);

p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5f);

p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0f);

p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0f);

    if (p != null)
    {
        string textPath =
@"..\..\..\example.txt";
        string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(textPath, ".pdf");

        if
(p.TextToPdfConvertFile(textPath, pdfPath)
== 0)

```

```

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
    else
    {

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting Text to PDF!");
        Console.ReadLine();
    }
}
}
}
}
}
}
}

```

#### How to convert Text file to PDF file in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Imports System
Imports System.IO

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            ;
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            ' Let's set: A4, Landscape
orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
            p.PageSettings.Size.A4()
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =

```

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie  
ntations.Landscape
```

```
p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5F)
```

```
p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5F)
```

```
p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0F)
```

```
p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0F)
```

```
        If p IsNot Nothing Then  
            Dim textPath As String =  
                "..\..\..\example.txt"  
            Dim pdfPath As String =  
                Path.ChangeExtension(textPath, ".pdf")
```

```
            If  
p.TextToPdfConvertFile(textPath, pdfPath) =  
0 Then
```

```
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New  
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)  
With {.UseShellExecute = True})  
            Else
```

```
System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred  
during converting Text to PDF!")  
                Console.ReadLine()
```

```
            End If  
        End If  
    End Sub  
End Class  
End Namespace
```

▲ See Also

## Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSettings Property

Set properties for resulting PDF document, such as PDF version, compression etc.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting  
PdfSettings { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Serial Property

**Note: This API is now obsolete.**

Property to activate your copy, the same as method [SetSerial](#)

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
[ObsoleteAttribute]  
public string Serial { set; }
```

Property Value

**string** ▲ **Remarks** Use this property after purchasing.

## ▲ Example

Activate the component after purchasing in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;  
using System.IO;  
using System.Collections;  
using SautinSoft;  
  
namespace Sample  
{  
    class Test
```

```

    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Get your free 30-day key
            here: // https://sautinsoft.com/start-
for-free/

            // Activate your license here

PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234567890");

            // Place your serial(s) number.
            // You will get own serial
number(s) after purchasing the license.
            // If you will have any
questions, email us to sales@sautinsoft.com
or ask at online chat
https://www.sautinsoft.com.

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            string docxPath =
@"..\..\..\example.docx";
            string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(docxPath, ".pdf");
            if
(p.DocxToPdfConvertFile(docxPath, pdfPath)
== 0)

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
        }
    }

```

```
}  
}
```


#### Activate the component after purchasing in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```
Imports System  
Imports System.IO  
Imports System.Collections  
  
Namespace Sample  
    Friend Class Test  
  
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As  
String)  
            ' Get your free 30-day key here:  
            ' https://sautinsoft.com/start-  
for-free/  
  
            ' Activation of PDF  
Metamorphosis .Net after purchasing  
  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234  
567890")  
  
            ' Place your serial(s) number.  
            ' You will get own serial  
number(s) after purchasing the license.  
            ' If you will have any  
questions, email us to sales@sautinsoft.com  
or ask at online chat  
https://www.sautinsoft.com.  
  
            Dim p As New  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()  
  
            Dim docxPath As String =  
"..\\..\\..\\example.docx"  
            Dim pdfPath As String =
```



```
        Dim pdfPath As String =  
Path.ChangeExtension(docxPath, ".pdf")  
        If  
p.DocxToPdfConvertFile(docxPath, pdfPath) =  
0 Then  
  
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New  
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)  
With {.UseShellExecute = True})  
        End If  
    End Sub  
End Class  
End Namespace
```



## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Text Settings Property

Allows to set text properties: font face, size, colors, image quality and other conversion options

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting  
TextSettings { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarks Property

Add waterMarks in PDF document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarksCollection  
WaterMarks { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarksCollection](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)









Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)










PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.












# PdfMetamorphosis Methods

The [PdfMetamorphosis](#) type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">DocToPdfConvertByte</a>	Convert the array of bytes with DOC document to a PDF bytes array.
	<a href="#">DocToPdfConvertFile</a>	Converts DOC file to PDF file.
	<a href="#">DocToPdfConvertStream</a>	Convert the stream with DOC document to a PDF stream.
	<a href="#">DocxToPdfConvertByte</a>	Convert the array of bytes with DOCX document to a PDF bytes array.
	<a href="#">DocxToPdfConvertFile</a>	Converts DOCX file to PDF file.
	<a href="#">DocxToPdfConvertStream</a>	Convert the stream with DOCX document to a PDF stream.
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default

		hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<a href="#">HtmlToPdfConvertByte</a>	Converts array of HTML bytes into array of PDF bytes.
	<a href="#">HtmlToPdfConvertFile</a>	Converts HTML file or URL to PDF file. Output file will be overwritten.
	<a href="#">HtmlToPdfConvertFileToByte</a>	Converts HTML file or URL into array of PDF bytes.
	<a href="#">HtmlToPdfConvertStream</a>	Convert the stream with HTML document to a PDF stream.
	<a href="#">HtmlToPdfConvertStringToByte</a>	Converts HTML string into array of PDF bytes. Don't forget to set the property <a href="#">BaseUrl</a> to see images in output PDF file.
	<a href="#">HtmlToPdfConvertStringToFile</a>	Converts HTML string to PDF file. Don't forget to set the property <a href="#">BaseUrl</a> to see images in output PDF file.
	<a href="#">MergePDFFileArrayToPDFFile</a>	Merge several PDF files into a single PDF file
	<a href="#">MergePDFFileArrayToPDFStream</a>	Merge several PDF files into a single document as byte stream

	<a href="#">MergePDFFileToPDFFile</a>	Merge two PDF files. Merge File1Path and DestFile file into a single DestFile.
	<a href="#">MergePDFStreamArrayToPDFStream</a>	Merge several PDF documents into a single document in memory
	<a href="#">PrintPdf(String)</a>	Print the PDF file using the default printer
	<a href="#">PrintPdf(String, Int32, Int32)</a>	Print the PDF file using the default printer with time settings
	<a href="#">RtfToPdfConvertByte</a>	Converts array of RTF bytes into array of PDF bytes.
	<a href="#">RtfToPdfConvertFile</a>	Converts a RTF file to PDF file.
	<a href="#">RtfToPdfConvertFileToByte</a>	Converts RTF file into array of PDF bytes.
	<a href="#">RtfToPdfConvertStream</a>	Convert the stream with RTF document to a PDF stream.
	<a href="#">RtfToPdfConvertStringToByte</a>	Converts RTF string into array of PDF bytes.
	<a href="#">RtfToPdfConvertStringToFile</a>	Converts RTF string to PDF file.
	<a href="#">SetLicense</a>	Activate your copy after purchasing or use temporary license for delete trial message. ATTENTION: specify this








property first of all before creating the instance of PDF Metamorphosis!

Use it when you got own license. We offer two license types:

Permanent license from [sautinsoft.com](http://sautinsoft.com) and

Temporary license from [start-for-free](http://start-for-free).

Have question? Ask us: [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com).

	<b>SetSerial</b>	<b>Obsolete.</b> Method for activation of your copy, doesn't work in trial version. The method works the same as <a href="#">Serial</a> property
	<b>SplitPDFFileToPDFFolder</b>	Splits PDF document by pages
	<b>TextToPdfConvertByte</b>	Converts array of Text bytes into array of PDF bytes.
	<b>TextToPdfConvertFile</b>	Converts a Text file to PDF file.
	<b>TextToPdfConvertStream</b>	Convert the stream with Text document to a PDF stream.
	<b>TextToPdfConvertStringToByte</b>	Converts string of Text into array of PDF bytes.
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that

represents the current object.  
(Inherited from **Object**)

---

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis DocToPdf ConvertByte Method

Convert the array of bytes with DOC document to a PDF bytes array.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public byte[] DocToPdfConvertByte(  
    byte[] docBytes  
)
```

## Parameters

*docBytes* **Byte**

Array of bytes with DOC document.

## Return Value

**Byte**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed.

## ▲ Example

How to convert DOC to PDF in memory using C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;  
using System.IO;
```

```

using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            if (p != null)
            {
                string docPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.doc";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(docPath, ".pdf");
                byte[] doc =
                File.ReadAllBytes(docPath);

                // 2. Convert DOC to PDF in
                memory
                byte[] pdf =
                p.DocToPdfConvertByte(doc);

                if (pdf != null)
                {
                    // 3. Save the PDF
                    document to a file for a viewing purpose.
                    File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdf);
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
    }
    else
    {

System.Console.WriteLine("Conversion
failed!");
        Console.ReadLine();
    }
}
}
}
}
}
}
}

```

#### How to convert DOC to PDF in memory using VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Imports System
Imports System.IO

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test

        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            ,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            If p IsNot Nothing Then
                Dim docPath As String =

```

```

    "..\..\..\example.doc"
        Dim pdfPath As String =
Path.ChangeExtension(docPath, ".pdf")
        Dim doc() As Byte =
File.ReadAllBytes(docPath)

        ' 2. Convert DOC to PDF in
memory
        Dim pdf() As Byte =
p.DocToPdfConvertByte(doc)

        If pdf IsNot Nothing Then
            ' 3. Save the PDF
document to a file for a viewing purpose.
File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdf)

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
        Else

System.Console.WriteLine("Conversion
failed!")
            Console.ReadLine()
        End If
    End If
End Sub
End Class
End Namespace

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis DocToPdf ConvertFile Method

Converts DOC file to PDF file.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public int DocToPdfConvertFile(  
    string docPath,  
    string pdfPath  
)
```

## Parameters

*docPath* **String**

Path to a local DOC file.

*pdfPath* **String**

A local path to create a PDF file.

## Return Value

**Int32**

0 - converting successfully

1 - can't open input DOC file, check the input path.

2 - can't create output PDF file, check the output path.

3 - conversion failed.

## Example

How to convert DOC file to PDF file in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            if (p != null)
            {
                string docPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.doc";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(docPath, ".pdf");

                // 2. Convert DOC file to
                PDF file

                if
                (p.DocToPdfConvertFile(docPath, pdfPath) ==
                0)

                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
```

```

System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
    else
    {

System.Console.WriteLine("Conversion
failed!");

        Console.ReadLine();
    }
}
}
}
}
}

```

#### How to convert DOC file to PDF file in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Imports System
Imports System.IO

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test

        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            ;

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            If p IsNot Nothing Then
                Dim docPath As String =
"..\\..\\..\\example.doc"
                Dim pdfPath As String =
Path.ChangeExtension(docPath, ".pdf")

```



```

' 2. Convert DOC file to PDF
file
    If
p.DocToPdfConvertFile(docPath, pdfPath) = 0
Then

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
    Else

System.Console.WriteLine("Conversion
failed!")
        Console.ReadLine()
    End If
End If
End Sub
End Class
End Namespace

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis DocToPdf ConvertStream Method

Convert the stream with DOC document to a PDF stream.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public Stream DocToPdfConvertStream(  
    Stream inputStream  
)
```

## Parameters

*inputStream* **Stream**

Stream with DOC document.

## Return Value

**Stream**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis DocxToPdf ConvertByte Method

Convert the array of bytes with DOCX document to a PDF bytes array.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public byte[] DocxToPdfConvertByte(  
    byte[] docxBytes  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

*docxBytes* **Byte**

Array of bytes with DOCX document.

## Return Value

**Byte**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed.

## ▲ Example

How to convert DOCX to PDF in memory using C#

```
using System;  
using System.IO;
```

[Copy](#)

```
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            if (p != null)
            {
                string docxPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.docx";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(docxPath, ".pdf");
                byte[] docx =
                File.ReadAllBytes(docxPath);

                // 2. Convert DOCX to PDF in
                memory
                byte[] pdf =
                p.DocxToPdfConvertByte(docx);

                if (pdf != null)
                {
                    // 3. Save the PDF
                    document to a file for a viewing purpose.
                    File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdf);
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
    }
    else
    {

System.Console.WriteLine("Conversion
failed!");
        Console.ReadLine();
    }
}
}
}
}
}
}
}

```

#### How to convert DOCX to PDF in memory using VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Imports System
Imports System.IO

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test

        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            ,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            If p IsNot Nothing Then
                Dim docxPath As String =

```

```

    "...\\...\\...\\example.docx"
        Dim pdfPath As String =
Path.ChangeExtension(docxPath, ".pdf")
        Dim docx() As Byte =
File.ReadAllBytes(docxPath)

        ' 2. Convert DOCX to PDF in
memory
        Dim pdf() As Byte =
p.DocxToPdfConvertByte(docx)

        If pdf IsNot Nothing Then
            ' 3. Save the PDF
document to a file for a viewing purpose.
File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdf)

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
        Else

System.Console.WriteLine("Conversion
failed!")
            Console.ReadLine()
        End If
    End If
End Sub
End Class
End Namespace

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis DocxToPdf ConvertFile Method

Converts DOCX file to PDF file.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public int DocxToPdfConvertFile(  
    string docxPath,  
    string pdfPath  
)
```

## Parameters

*docxPath* **String**

Path to a local DOCX file.

*pdfPath* **String**

A local path to create a PDF file.

## Return Value

**Int32**

0 - converting successfully

1 - can't open input DOCX file, check the input path.

2 - can't create output PDF file, check the output path.

3 - conversion failed.

## Example

How to convert DOCX file to PDF file in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            if (p != null)
            {
                string docxPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.docx";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(docxPath, ".pdf");

                // 2. Convert DOCX file to
                PDF file

                if
                (p.DocxToPdfConvertFile(docxPath, pdfPath)
                == 0)

                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
```

```

System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
    else
    {

System.Console.WriteLine("Conversion
failed!");
        Console.ReadLine();
    }
}
}
}
}
}
}
}

```

#### How to convert DOCX file to PDF file in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Imports System
Imports System.IO

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test

        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            ;
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            If p IsNot Nothing Then
                Dim docxPath As String =
"..\\..\\..\\example.docx"
                Dim pdfPath As String =
Path.ChangeExtension(docxPath, ".pdf")

```

```

                ' 2. Convert DOCX file to
PDF file
                If
p.DocxToPdfConvertFile(docxPath, pdfPath) =
0 Then

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
                Else

System.Console.WriteLine("Conversion
failed!")

                Console.ReadLine()
                End If
            End If
        End Sub
    End Class
End Namespace

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis DocxToPdf ConvertStream Method

Convert the stream with DOCX document to a PDF stream.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public Stream DocxToPdfConvertStream(  
    Stream inputStream  
)
```

## Parameters

*inputStream* **Stream**

Stream with DOCX document.

## Return Value

**Stream**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis HtmlToPdf ConvertByte Method

Converts array of HTML bytes into array of PDF bytes.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public byte[] HtmlToPdfConvertByte(  
    byte[] inputBytes  
)
```

## Parameters

*inputBytes* **Byte**

HTML document as bytes array

## Return Value

**Byte**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosis HtmlToPdf ConvertFile Method

Converts HTML file or URL to PDF file. Output file will be overwritten.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public int HtmlToPdfConvertFile(  
    string inputFileName,  
    string outputFileName  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

*inputFileName* **String**

Path to local HTML file or URL

*outputFileName* **String**

Local path to output PDF file

## Return Value

**Int32**

0 - converting successfully

1 - can't open input HTML file, check the input path

2 - can't create output file, check the output path

3 - converting failed ▲ **Example**

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            //specify some options
            p.PageSettings.Size.A4();
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
            ntations.Landscape;
            p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =
            "Page {page} of {numpages}";

            if (p != null)
            {
                string inputFile =
                @"..\..\..\example.htm";
                string outputFile =
                @"..\..\..\test.pdf";

                int result =
                p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(inputFile,
```

```
outputFile);

        if (result == 0)
        {
            System.Console.WriteLine("Converted
            successfully!");
        }

        System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
        System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(outputFi
        le) { UseShellExecute = true });
    }
    else
    {
        System.Console.WriteLine("Converting
        Error!");
    }
}
}
```

## How to convert HTML file to PDF file in VB.Net

Copy

```
Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test

        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()
```

```

        'specify some options
        p.PageSettings.Size.A4()
        p.PageSettings.Orientation =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Landscape

        p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =
"Page {page} of {numpages}"

        If p IsNot Nothing Then
            Dim inputFile As String =
"..\\..\\..\\example.htm"
            Dim outputFile As String =
"..\\..\\..\\test.pdf"

            Dim result As Integer =
p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(inputFile,
outputFile)

            If result = 0 Then

System.Console.WriteLine("Converted
successfully!")

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(outputFi
le) With {.UseShellExecute = True})
            Else

System.Console.WriteLine("Converting
Error!")

            End If
        End If
    End Sub
End Class
End Namespace

```

---

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis HtmlToPdf ConvertFileToByte Method

Converts HTML file or URL into array of PDF bytes.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public byte[] HtmlToPdfConvertFileToByte(  
    string inputFileName  
)
```

## Parameters

*inputFileName* **String**

Path to local HTML file or URL

## Return Value

**Byte**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed

▲ **Remarks** Converts HTML file or URL into array of PDF bytes.

## ▲ Example

How to convert HTML string to PDF bytes using C# in memory

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;
using System.Net;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            if (p != null)
            {
                string htmlPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.htm";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(htmlPath, ".pdf");
                string htmlString = "";

                // The easiest way is using
                the method 'HtmlToPdfConvertFile':
                // int ret =
                p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(htmlPath, pdfPath);
                // or :
                // 1. Get HTML content.
                htmlString =
                ReadFromFile(htmlPath);
```

```

        // 2. Converting HTML to PDF
        // Specify BaseUrl to help
converter find a full path for relative
images, CSS.
        p.HtmlSettings.BaseUrl =
Path.GetDirectoryName(Path.GetFullPath(htmlPath));
        byte[] pdfBytes =
p.HtmlToPdfConvertStringToByte(htmlString);

        if (pdfBytes != null)
        {
            // 3. Save the PDF
document to a file for a viewing purpose.

File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdfBytes);

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
        }
        else
        {
            System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting HTML to PDF!");
        }
    }

    public static string
ReadFromFile(string fileName)
    {
        try
        {
            FileInfo fi = new

```



```

FileInfo(fileName);
        FileStream strmRead =
fi.Open(FileMode.Open);
        int len = (int)fi.Length;
        byte[] b = new byte[len];
        strmRead.Read(b, 0, len);
        strmRead.Close();
        char[] arCharRes = new
char[len];
        for (int i = 0; i < len;
i++)
        {
            arCharRes[i] =
(char)b[i];
        }
        return new
string(arCharRes);
    }
    catch
    {
        return "";
    }
}
}
}

```

#### How to convert HTML string PDF bytes using VB.Net in memory

[Copy](#)

```

Imports System.IO

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test

        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            ,

```

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234  
567890")
```

```
    Dim p As New  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()
```

```
    If p IsNot Nothing Then  
        Dim htmlPath As String =  
        "...\\...\\...\\example.htm"  
        Dim pdfPath As String =  
Path.ChangeExtension(htmlPath, ".pdf")  
        Dim htmlString As String =  
        ""
```

```
        ' The easiest way is using  
the method 'HtmlToPdfConvertFile':
```

```
        ' int ret =  
p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(htmlPath, pdfPath)  
        ' or :  
        ' 1. Get HTML content.  
htmlString =  
ReadFromFile(htmlPath)
```

```
        ' 2. Converting HTML to PDF  
        ' Specify BaseUrl to help  
converter find a full path for relative  
images, CSS.
```

```
        p.HtmlSettings.BaseUrl =  
Path.GetDirectoryName(Path.GetFullPath(htmlP  
ath))
```

```
        Dim pdfBytes() As Byte =  
p.HtmlToPdfConvertStringToByte(htmlString)
```

```
    If pdfBytes IsNot Nothing  
Then
```

```
        ' 3. Save the PDF
```

document to a file for a viewing purpose.

```
File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdfBytes)

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
Else

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting HTML to PDF!")
End If
End If
End Sub
Public Shared Function
ReadFromFile(ByVal fileName As String) As
String
Try
Dim fi As New
FileInfo(fileName)
Dim strmRead As FileStream =
fi.Open(FileMode.Open)
Dim len As Integer =
CInt(fi.Length)
Dim b(len - 1) As Byte
strmRead.Read(b, 0, len)
strmRead.Close()
Dim arCharRes(len - 1) As
Char
For i As Integer = 0 To len
- 1
arCharRes(i) =
Microsoft.VisualBasic.ChrW(b(i))
Next i
Return New String(arCharRes)
Catch
Return ""
```

```
End Try
End Function
End Class
End Namespace
```

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis HtmlToPdf ConvertStream Method

Convert the stream with HTML document to a PDF stream.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public Stream HtmlToPdfConvertStream(  
    Stream inputStream  
)
```

## Parameters

*inputStream* **Stream**

Stream with HTML document.

## Return Value

**Stream**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis HtmlToPdf ConvertStringToByte Method

Converts HTML string into array of PDF bytes. Don't forget to set the property [BaseUrl](#) to see images in output PDF file.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public byte[] HtmlToPdfConvertStringToByte(  
    string inputString  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

*inputString* **String**

Any string in HTML format, even a piece of HTML code

## Return Value

**Byte**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed

## ▲ Example

How to convert HTML string to PDF bytes using C# in memory

```
using System;  
using System.IO;  
using System.Collections;
```

[Copy](#)

```

using System.Net;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            if (p != null)
            {
                string htmlPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.htm";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(htmlPath, ".pdf");
                string htmlString = "";

                // The easiest way is using
                the method 'HtmlToPdfConvertFile':
                // int ret =
                p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(htmlPath, pdfPath);
                // or :
                // 1. Get HTML content.
                htmlString =
                ReadFromFile(htmlPath);

                // 2. Converting HTML to PDF
                // Specify BaseUrl to help
                converter find a full path for relative
            }
        }
    }
}

```



images, CSS.

```
        p.HtmlSettings.BaseUrl =  
Path.GetDirectoryName(Path.GetFullPath(htmlPath));
```

```
        byte[] pdfBytes =  
p.HtmlToPdfConvertStringToByte(htmlString);
```

```
        if (pdfBytes != null)  
        {  
            // 3. Save the PDF  
document to a file for a viewing purpose.
```

```
File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdfBytes);
```

```
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new  
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)  
{ UseShellExecute = true });
```

```
        }  
        else  
        {  
  
System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred  
during converting HTML to PDF!");  
        }  
    }  
}
```

```
        public static string  
ReadFromFile(string fileName)  
        {  
            try  
            {  
                FileInfo fi = new  
FileInfo(fileName);  
                FileStream strmRead =  
fi.Open(FileMode.Open);  
                int len = (int)fi.Length;
```

```

        byte[] b = new byte[len];
        strmRead.Read(b, 0, len);
        strmRead.Close();
        char[] arCharRes = new
char[len];
        for (int i = 0; i < len;
i++)
        {
            arCharRes[i] =
(char)b[i];
        }
        return new
string(arCharRes);
    }
    catch
    {
        return "";
    }
}
}

```

How to convert HTML string PDF bytes using VB.Net in memory

[Copy](#)

```
Imports System.IO
```

```
Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
```

```
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
```

```
            ' Activate your license here
            ,
```

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")
```

```
        Dim p As New
```

```

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

    If p IsNot Nothing Then
        Dim htmlPath As String =
            "..\..\..\example.htm"
        Dim pdfPath As String =
            Path.ChangeExtension(htmlPath, ".pdf")
        Dim htmlString As String =
            ""

            ' The easiest way is using
            the method 'HtmlToPdfConvertFile':
            ' int ret =
p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(htmlPath, pdfPath)
            ' or :
            ' 1. Get HTML content.
            htmlString =
            ReadFromFile(htmlPath)

            ' 2. Converting HTML to PDF
            ' Specify BaseUrl to help
            converter find a full path for relative
            images, CSS.
            p.HtmlSettings.BaseUrl =
            Path.GetDirectoryName(Path.GetFullPath(htmlP
            ath))

            Dim pdfBytes() As Byte =
            p.HtmlToPdfConvertStringToByte(htmlString)

            If pdfBytes IsNot Nothing
            Then

                ' 3. Save the PDF
                document to a file for a viewing purpose.
                File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdfBytes)

```

```

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
Else

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting HTML to PDF!")
End If
End If
End Sub
Public Shared Function
ReadFromFile(ByVal fileName As String) As
String
Try
Dim fi As New
FileInfo(fileName)
Dim strmRead As FileStream =
fi.Open(FileMode.Open)
Dim len As Integer =
CInt(fi.Length)
Dim b(len - 1) As Byte
strmRead.Read(b, 0, len)
strmRead.Close()
Dim arCharRes(len - 1) As
Char
For i As Integer = 0 To len
- 1
arCharRes(i) =
Microsoft.VisualBasic.ChrW(b(i))
Next i
Return New String(arCharRes)
Catch
Return ""
End Try
End Function
End Class
End Namespace

```

---

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis HtmlToPdf ConvertStringToFile Method

Converts HTML string to PDF file. Don't forget to set the property [BaseUrl](#) to see images in output PDF file.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public int HtmlToPdfConvertStringToFile(  
    string inputString,  
    string outputFileName  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

### *inputString* **String**

Any string in HTML format, even a piece of HTML code

### *outputFileName* **String**

Local path to output PDF file

## Return Value

### **Int32**

0 - converting successfully

2 - can't create output file, check the output path

3 - converting failed

## Example

How to convert HTML string to PDF file in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            // Specify some PDF options.
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
            ntations.Portrait;
            p.PageSettings.Size.Letter();

            // Specify header in HTML
            format.

            p.PageSettings.Header.FromString("<b>Sample
            header in HTML
            format</b>", SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.Head
            ersFooters.InputFormat.Html);
```

```

        // Specify footer in RTF format.

p.PageSettings.Footer.FromString(@"{\rtf1 \b
Bold Footer}",
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I
nputFormat.Rtf );

        // Specify page numbers
        p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =
"Page {page} of {numpages}";
        p.PageSettings.Numbering.PosX.Mm
= p.PageSettings.Size.Width.Mm/2;
        p.PageSettings.Numbering.PosY.Mm
= 10;

        if (p != null)
        {
            string htmlPath =
@"..\..\..\example.htm";
            string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(htmlPath, ".pdf");
            string htmlString = "";

            // The easiest way is using
the method 'HtmlToPdfConvertFile':
            // int ret =
p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(htmlPath,pdfPath);
            // or :
            // 1. Get HTML content from
file

            htmlString =
ReadFromFile(htmlPath);

            // 2. Converting HTML to PDF
            // Specify BaseUrl to help
converter find a full path to relative
images and external CSS.

```



```

        p.HtmlSettings.BaseUrl =
Path.GetDirectoryName(htmlPath);

        if
(p.HtmlToPdfConvertStringToFile(htmlString,
pdfPath)==0)

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
        else

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting HTML to PDF!");
    }
}

    public static string
ReadFromFile(string fileName)
    {
        try
        {
            FileInfo fi = new
FileInfo(fileName);
            FileStream strmRead =
fi.Open(FileMode.Open);
            int len = (int)fi.Length;
            byte[] b = new byte[len];
            strmRead.Read(b, 0, len);
            strmRead.Close();
            char[] arCharRes = new
char[len];
            for (int i = 0; i < len;
i++)
            {
                arCharRes[i] =
(char)b[i];

```

```

        }
        return new
string(arCharRes);
    }
    catch
    {
        return "";
    }
}
}
}

```

#### How to convert HTML string to PDF file in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Imports Microsoft.VisualBasic
Imports System.IO

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test

        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            ,
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            ' Specify some PDF options.
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Portrait
            p.PageSettings.Size.Letter()

            ' Specify header in HTML format.

```

```
p.PageSettings.Header.FromString("<b>Sample  
header in HTML format</b>",  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I  
nputFormat.Html)
```

```
' Specify footer in RTF format.
```

```
p.PageSettings.Footer.FromString("{\rtf1 \b  
Bold footer}",  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I  
nputFormat.Rtf)
```

```
' Specify page numbers  
p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =  
"Page {page} of {numpages}"  
p.PageSettings.Numbering.PosX.Mm  
= p.PageSettings.Size.Width.Mm / 2  
p.PageSettings.Numbering.PosY.Mm  
= 10
```

```
If p IsNot Nothing Then  
    Dim htmlPath As String =  
    "..\..\..\example.htm"  
    Dim pdfPath As String =  
    Path.ChangeExtension(htmlPath, ".pdf")  
    Dim htmlString As String =  
    ""
```

```
' The easiest way is using  
the method 'HtmlToPdfConvertFile':
```

```
' int ret =  
p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(htmlPath,pdfPath)  
' or :  
' 1. Get HTML content from  
file  
htmlString =
```

```

ReadFromFile(htmlPath)

        ' 2. Converting HTML to PDF
        ' Specify BaseUrl to help
converter find a full path to relative
images and external CSS.
        p.HtmlSettings.BaseUrl =
Path.GetDirectoryName(htmlPath)

        If
p.HtmlToPdfConvertStringToFile(htmlString,
pdfPath) = 0 Then

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
        Else

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting HTML to PDF!")
        End If
    End If
End Sub
Public Shared Function
ReadFromFile(ByVal fileName As String) As
String
    Try
        Dim fi As New
FileInfo(fileName)
        Dim strmRead As FileStream =
fi.Open(FileMode.Open)
        Dim len As Integer =
CInt(fi.Length)
        Dim b(len - 1) As Byte
        strmRead.Read(b, 0, len)
        strmRead.Close()
        Dim arCharRes(len - 1) As

```

```
Char
        For i As Integer = 0 To len
- 1
            arCharRes(i) =
ChrW(b(i))
        Next i
        Return New String(arCharRes)
    Catch
        Return ""
    End Try
End Function
End Class
End Namespace
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Merge PDFFileArrayToPDFFile Method

Merge several PDF files into a single PDF file

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public int MergePDFFileArrayToPDFFile(  
    string[] Files,  
    string DestFile  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

### *Files* **String**

Array of paths to PDF documents

### *DestFile* **String**

Path to resulting PDF, it will be created by the component or overwritten if the PDF document already exists

## Return Value

### **Int32**

0 - merged successfully

1 - error, can't merge PDF documents

2 - error, can't create output file, probably it used by another

application

3 - merging failed

4 - merged successfully, but some files were not merged ▲

## Example

How to split and merge PDF documents using C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();
            string rtfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
@"..\..\..\test.pdf";

            // Let's create a PDF file from
RTF file
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Landscape;
```

```

        //Specify page numbers: {1 of
N}, font: Verdana, 18
        p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =
"{page} of {numpages}";

p.PageSettings.Numbering.FontFace =
"Verdana";

p.PageSettings.Numbering.FontSize = 18;

        p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath,
pdfPath);

        #region split PDF file
        //Split PDF by pages: 1st, 2nd,
3rd ...

p.SplitPDFFileToPDFFolder(pdfPath,
Path.GetDirectoryName(pdfPath));
        #endregion

        #region merge PDF files
        //Merge only 1st and 3rd pages
        string[] pdfFiles = {
@"..\..\..\test-00001.pdf", @"..\..\..\test-
00003.pdf" };

p.MergePDFFileArrayToPDFFile(pdfFiles,
@"..\..\..\test_Split_and_Merge_1and3page.pdf");
        #endregion

        //Show merged PDF (it doesn't
have 2nd page)

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(@"..\..\

```



```

..\test_Split_and_Merge_1and3page.pdf") {
UseShellExecute = true });
    }
}

```

#### How to split and merge PDF documents using VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```
Imports System.IO
```

```
Module sample
```

```
    Sub Main()
```

```
        ' Activate your license here
        ,
```

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")
```

```
        Dim p As New
```

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()
```

```
        Dim rtfPath As String =
        "..\..\..\example.rtf"
```

```
        Dim pdfPath As String =
        "..\..\..\test.pdf"
```

```
        ' Let's create a PDF file from RTF
file
```

```
        p.PageSettings.Orientation =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Landscape
```

```
        'Specify page numbers: {1 of N},
font: Verdana, 18
```

```
        p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text = "
{page} of {numpages}"
```

```
        p.PageSettings.Numbering.FontFace =
"Verdana"
```

```

18         p.PageSettings.Numbering.FontSize =
        p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath,
pdfPath)

        'Split PDF by pages: 1st, 2nd, 3rd
...
        p.SplitPDFFileToPDFFolder(pdfPath,
Path.GetDirectoryName(pdfPath))

        'Merge only 1st and 3rd pages
        Dim pdfFiles() As String =
{"..\..\..\test-00001.pdf", "....\..\test-
00003.pdf"}

p.MergePDFFileArrayToPDFFile(pdfFiles,
"..\..\..\test_Split_and_Merge_1and3page.pdf
")

        'Show merged PDF (it doesn't have
2nd page)
        System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo("..\..\..\
..\test_Split_and_Merge_1and3page.pdf") With
{.UseShellExecute = True})
        End Sub
End Module

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Merge PDFFileArrayToPDFStream Method

Merge several PDF files into a single document as byte stream

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public byte[] MergePDFFileArrayToPDFStream(  
    string[] Files  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

*Files* **String**

Array of paths to PDF documents

## Return Value

**Byte**

Single PDF document as byte array or null in case of merging

failed ▲ **See Also**

## Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Merge PDFFileToPDFFile Method

Merge two PDF files. Merge File1Path and DestFile file into a single DestFile.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public int MergePDFFileToPDFFile(  
    string File1Path,  
    string DestFile  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

### *File1Path* **String**

Path to an existing PDF file

### *DestFile* **String**

Path to a second PDF file to merge the first file into

## Return Value

### **Int32**

0 - merged successfully

1 - error, can't merge PDF documents

2 - error, can't create output file, probably it used by another application

3 - merging failed ▲ **Remarks** If the second file does not already exist the component just copies the first file to a new name

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Merge PDFStreamArrayToPDFStream Method

Merge several PDF documents into a single document in memory

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public byte[]  
MergePDFStreamArrayToPDFStream(  
    ArrayList pdfBytes  
)
```

## Parameters

*pdfBytes* **ArrayList**

ArrayList which contains PDF documents as array of bytes

## Return Value

**Byte**

Single PDF document as byte array or null in case of merging

failed ▲ **Example**

How to merge PDF documents in memory using C#

[Copy](#)



```

using System;
using System.Data;
using System.Configuration;
using System.Web;
using System.Web.Security;
using System.Web.UI;
using System.Web.UI.WebControls;
using System.Web.UI.WebControls.WebParts;
using System.Web.UI.HtmlControls;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

public partial class _Default :
System.Web.UI.Page
{
    protected void Page_Load(object sender,
EventArgs e)
    {
        Result.Text = "";
    }
    protected void Button1_Click(object
sender, EventArgs e)
    {
        // Activate your license here
        //
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890");
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p = new
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

        ArrayList pdfs = new ArrayList();
        int files = 0;

        if (FileUpload1.FileBytes.Length >
0)

```

```

        {
            pdfs.Add(FileUpload1.FileBytes);
            files++;
        }
        if (FileUpload2.FileBytes.Length >
0)
        {
            pdfs.Add(FileUpload2.FileBytes);
            files++;
        }
        if (FileUpload3.FileBytes.Length >
0)
        {
            pdfs.Add(FileUpload3.FileBytes);
            files++;
        }

        if (files < 2)
        {
            Result.Text = "Error! Before
merging please select at least two PDF
documents!";
            return;
        }

        byte[] pdfBytes = null;

        //merge
        pdfBytes =
p.MergePDFStreamArrayToPDFStream(pdfs);

        //show PDF
        if (pdfBytes != null)
        {
            Response.Buffer = true;
            Response.Clear();
            Response.ContentType =

```

```

"application/PDF";
        Response.AppendHeader("content-
disposition", "attachment;
filename=single.pdf");
        Response.BinaryWrite(pdfBytes);
        Response.Flush();
        Response.End();
    }
    else
    {
        Result.Text = "Error in merging
these PDF files, email to
support@sautinsoft.com!";
    }
}
}

```

#### How to merge PDF documents in memory using VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Partial Public Class _Default
    Inherits System.Web.UI.Page
    Protected Sub Page_Load(ByVal sender As
Object, ByVal e As EventArgs)
        Result.Text = ""
    End Sub
    Protected Sub Button1_Click(ByVal sender
As Object, ByVal e As EventArgs)
        ' Activate your license here
        ,
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

        Dim p As New
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        Dim pdfs As New ArrayList()
        Dim files As Integer = 0
    End Sub
End Class

```

```

Then      If FileUpload1.FileBytes.Length > 0
           pdfs.Add(FileUpload1.FileBytes)
           files += 1
        End If
Then      If FileUpload2.FileBytes.Length > 0
           pdfs.Add(FileUpload2.FileBytes)
           files += 1
        End If
Then      If FileUpload3.FileBytes.Length > 0
           pdfs.Add(FileUpload3.FileBytes)
           files += 1
        End If

        If files < 2 Then
            Result.Text = "Error! Before
merging please select at least two PDF
documents!"
            Return
        End If

        Dim pdfBytes() As Byte = Nothing

        'merge
        pdfBytes =
p.MergePDFStreamArrayToPDFStream(pdfs)

        'show PDF
        If pdfBytes IsNot Nothing Then
            Response.Buffer = True
            Response.Clear()
            Response.ContentType =
"application/PDF"
            Response.AppendHeader("content-

```

```
disposition", "attachment;  
filename=single.pdf")  
    Response.BinaryWrite(pdfBytes)  
    Response.Flush()  
    Response.End()  
Else  
    Result.Text = "Error in merging  
these PDF files, email to  
support@sautinsoft.com!"  
End If  
End Sub  
End Class
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---



[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis PrintPdf Method

## ▲ Overload List

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">PrintPdf(String)</a>	Print the PDF file using the default printer
	<a href="#">PrintPdf(String, Int32, Int32)</a>	Print the PDF file using the default printer with time settings

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Print Pdf(String) Method

Print the PDF file using the default printer

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public void PrintPdf(  
    string PdfFile  
)
```

## Parameters

*PdfFile* **String**

Path to the PDF file to be printed

▲ **Remarks** This method uses the "Adobe Reader" to print PDF documents. Please be sure that you have installed "Acrobat Reader".

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[PrintPdf Overload](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosis Print Pdf(String, Int32, Int32) Method

Print the PDF file using the default printer with time settings

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public void PrintPdf(  
    string PdfFile,  
    int timeInSecToLoadAdobeReader,  
    int  
    timeInSecToSendingDocumentOnPrint  
)
```

## Parameters

### *PdfFile* **String**

Path to the PDF file to be printed

### *timeInSecToLoadAdobeReader* **Int32**

Timeout in seconds to load Adobe Reader

### *timeInSecToSendingDocumentOnPrint* **Int32**

Timeout in seconds to send PDF document on print

▲ **Remarks** This method uses the "Adobe Reader" to print PDF documents. Please be sure that you have installed

"Acrobat Reader".

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[PrintPdf Overload](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis RtfToPdf ConvertByte Method

Converts array of RTF bytes into array of PDF bytes.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public byte[] RtfToPdfConvertByte(  
    byte[] inputBytes  
)
```

## Parameters

*inputBytes* **Byte**

RTF document as bytes array

## Return Value

**Byte**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis RtfToPdf ConvertFile Method

Converts a RTF file to PDF file.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public int RtfToPdfConvertFile(  
    string rtfPath,  
    string pdfPath  
)
```

## Parameters

*rtfPath* **String**

Local path to input RTF file

*pdfPath* **String**

Local path to output PDF file

## Return Value

**Int32**

0 - converting successfully

1 - can't open input RTF file, check the input path

2 - can't create output file, check the output path

3 - converting failed

## Example

How to convert RTF file to PDF file in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            // Specify some page options.
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
            ntations.Landscape;

            // Set page header in HTML
            format.

            p.PageSettings.Header.FromString("<b
            style=\"color: green;\">Sample header in
            HTML format</b>",
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I
            nputFormat.Html);
```

```

        // Set page footer in RTF
format.

p.PageSettings.Footer.FromString("{\\rtf1
\\b Bold Footer in RTF format}",
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I
nputFormat.Rtf);

        // Set page numbers.
        p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =
"Page {page} of {numpages}";

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

            int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

            if (i != 0)
            {
                System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!");
            }
            else
            {
                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```
}  
}  
}
```

#### How to convert RTF file to PDF file in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```
Imports System  
Imports System.IO  
Imports System.Collections  
  
Namespace Sample  
  
    Friend Class Test  
  
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As  
String)  
            ' Activate your license here  
            ;  
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234  
567890")  
  
            Dim p As New  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()  
  
            ' Specify some page options.  
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie  
ntations.Landscape  
  
            ' Set page header in HTML  
format.  
  
            p.PageSettings.Header.FromString("<b  
style=""color: green;"">Sample header in  
HTML format</b>",  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I  
nputFormat.Html)
```



```

        ' Set page footer in RTF format.

p.PageSettings.Footer.FromString("{\rtf1 \b
Bold Footer in RTF format}",
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I
nputFormat.Rtf)

        ' Set page numbers.
        p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =
"Page {page} of {numpages}"

        If p IsNot Nothing Then
            Dim rtfPath As String =
"..\\..\\..\\example.rtf"
            Dim pdfPath As String =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf")

            Dim i As Integer =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

            If i <> 0 Then

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!")
            Else

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
            End If
        End If
    End Sub
End Class
End Namespace

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis RtfToPdf ConvertFileToByte Method

Converts RTF file into array of PDF bytes.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public byte[] RtfToPdfConvertFileToByte(  
    string inputFileName  
)
```

## Parameters

*inputFileName* **String**

Local path to input RTF file

## Return Value

**Byte**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed

## ▲ Example

How to convert RTF string to PDF bytes using C# in memory

[Copy](#)

```
using System;  
using System.IO;  
using System.Collections;
```

```
namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            // Specify some options.
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
            ntations.Landscape;

            // Specify page numbers.
            p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =
            "Page {page} of {numpages}";

            if (p != null)
            {
                string rtfPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");
                byte[] rtfBytes =
                File.ReadAllBytes(rtfPath);

                //2. Converting RTF to PDF
                byte[] pdfBytes =
                p.RtfToPdfConvertByte(rtfBytes);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

        if (pdfBytes != null)
        {
            //3. Save the PDF
document to a file for a viewing purpose.

File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdfBytes);

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
        }
        else
        {

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!");
        }
    }
}
}
}
}

```

How to convert RTF string PDF bytes using VB.Net in memory

[Copy](#)

```

Imports System.IO

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            ,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New

```

```

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        ' Specify some options.
        p.PageSettings.Orientation =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Landscape

        ' Specify page numbers.
        p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =
"Page {page} of {numpages}"

        If p IsNot Nothing Then
            Dim rtfPath As String =
"..\\..\\..\\example.rtf"
            Dim pdfPath As String =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf")
            Dim rtfBytes() As Byte =
File.ReadAllBytes(rtfPath)

            '2. Converting RTF to PDF
            Dim pdfBytes() As Byte =
p.RtfToPdfConvertByte(rtfBytes)

            If pdfBytes IsNot Nothing
Then

                '3. Save the PDF
document to a file for a viewing purpose.

File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdfBytes)

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
            Else

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred

```

```
during converting RTF to PDF!")  
        End If  
    End If  
End Sub  
End Class  
End Namespace
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis RtfToPdf ConvertStream Method

Convert the stream with RTF document to a PDF stream.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public Stream RtfToPdfConvertStream(  
    Stream inputStream  
)
```

## Parameters

*inputStream* **Stream**

Stream with RTF document.

## Return Value

**Stream**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)



Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis RtfToPdf ConvertStringToByte Method

Converts RTF string into array of PDF bytes.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public byte[] RtfToPdfConvertStringToByte(  
    string inputString  
)
```

## Parameters

*inputString* **String**

RTF document as string

## Return Value

**Byte**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed.

## ▲ Example

How to convert RTF string to PDF bytes using C# in memory

[Copy](#)

```
using System;  
using System.IO;  
using System.Collections;
```

```

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            // Specify some options.
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
            ntations.Landscape;

            // Specify page numbers.
            p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =
            "Page {page} of {numpages}";

            if (p != null)
            {
                string rtfPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");
                byte[] rtfBytes =
                File.ReadAllBytes(rtfPath);

                //2. Converting RTF to PDF
                byte[] pdfBytes =

```

```

p.RtfToPdfConvertByte(rtfBytes);

        if (pdfBytes != null)
        {
            //3. Save the PDF
document to a file for a viewing purpose.

File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdfBytes);

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
        }
        else
        {

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!");
        }
    }
}
}
}

```

How to convert RTF string PDF bytes using VB.Net in memory

[Copy](#)

```

Imports System.IO

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            ,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

```

```

        Dim p As New
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        ' Specify some options.
        p.PageSettings.Orientation =
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
        ntations.Landscape

        ' Specify page numbers.
        p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =
        "Page {page} of {numpages}"

        If p IsNot Nothing Then
            Dim rtfPath As String =
            "..\..\..\example.rtf"
            Dim pdfPath As String =
            Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf")
            Dim rtfBytes() As Byte =
            File.ReadAllBytes(rtfPath)

            '2. Converting RTF to PDF
            Dim pdfBytes() As Byte =
            p.RtfToPdfConvertByte(rtfBytes)

            If pdfBytes IsNot Nothing
            Then

                '3. Save the PDF
                document to a file for a viewing purpose.

                File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdfBytes)

                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
                System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
                With {.UseShellExecute = True})
            Else

```

```
System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred  
during converting RTF to PDF!")  
        End If  
    End If  
End Sub  
End Class  
End Namespace
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis RtfToPdf ConvertStringToFile Method

Converts RTF string to PDF file.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public int RtfToPdfConvertStringToFile(  
    string inputString,  
    string outputFileName  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

*inputString* **String**

RTF document as string

*outputFileName* **String**

Local path to output PDF file

## Return Value

**Int32**

0 - converting successfully

2 - can't create output file, check the output path

3 - converting failed ▲ **Example**

How to convert RTF string to PDF file in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            if (p != null)
            {
                string rtfPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

                // 1. Get RTF content from
                file
                string rtfString =
                File.ReadAllText(rtfPath);

                // 2. Convert RTF string to
                a PDF file
                if
                (p.RtfToPdfConvertStringToFile(rtfString, pdf
```



```

Path)==0)

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
    else

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!");
    }
}
}
}
}

```

#### How to convert RTF string to PDF file in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Imports System.IO

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            If p IsNot Nothing Then
                Dim rtfPath As String =
"..\\..\\..\\example.rtf"
                Dim pdfPath As String =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf")

                ' 1. Get RTF content from

```

```

file
        Dim rtfString As String =
File.ReadAllText(rtfPath)

        ' 2. Convert RTF string to a
PDF file
        If
p.RtfToPdfConvertStringToFile(rtfString,
pdfPath) = 0 Then

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
        Else

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!")
        End If
        End If
        End Sub
        End Class
End Namespace

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis SetLicense Method

Activate your copy after purchasing or use temporary license for delete trial message. ATTENTION: specify this property first of all before creating the instance of PDF Metamorphosis!

Use it when you got own license. We offer two license types:

Permanent license from [sautinsoft.com](https://sautinsoft.com) and

Temporary license from [start-for-free](https://start-for-free).

Have question? Ask us: [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com).

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public static void SetLicense(  
    string License  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

### *License* **String**

A string which contains a license. To get a permanent license, visit [sautinsoft.com](https://sautinsoft.com). To get a temporary license,

please use online form here: <https://sautinsoft.com/start-for-free/>.

## ▲ Example

Activate the component after purchasing in C#

Copy

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;
using SautinSoft;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Get your free 30-day key
            here: // https://sautinsoft.com/start-
for-free/

            // Activate your license here

PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234567890");

            // Place your serial(s) number.
            // You will get own serial
number(s) after purchasing the license.
            // If you will have any
questions, email us to sales@sautinsoft.com
or ask at online chat
https://www.sautinsoft.com.

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
```

```

new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

        string docxPath =
@"..\..\..\example.docx";
        string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(docxPath, ".pdf");
        if
(p.DocxToPdfConvertFile(docxPath, pdfPath)
== 0)

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
    }
}
}

```

Activate the component after purchasing in VB.Net

Copy

```

Imports System
Imports System.IO
Imports System.Collections

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test

        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Get your free 30-day key here:
            ' https://sautinsoft.com/start-
for-free/


            ' Activation of PDF
Metamorphosis .Net after purchasing

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

```

```
' Place your serial(s) number.  
' You will get own serial  
number(s) after purchasing the license.  
' If you will have any  
questions, email us to sales@sautinsoft.com  
or ask at online chat  
https://www.sautinsoft.com.
```

```
Dim p As New  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()  
  
Dim docxPath As String =  
"..\\..\\..\\example.docx"  
Dim pdfPath As String =  
Path.ChangeExtension(docxPath, ".pdf")  
If  
p.DocxToPdfConvertFile(docxPath, pdfPath) =  
0 Then  
  
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New  
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)  
With {.UseShellExecute = True})  
End If  
End Sub  
End Class  
End Namespace
```



## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis SetSerial Method

**Note: This API is now obsolete.**

Method for activation of your copy, doesn't work in trial version.  
The method works the same as [Serial](#) property

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
[ObsoleteAttribute]
public void SetSerial(
    string s
)
```

## Parameters

**s String**

Serial number as string

▲ **Remarks** Use this method only in full version after purchasing.

## ▲ Example

C#    VB

[Copy](#)



```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p = new  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();  
p.SetSerial("123456789");
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Split PDFFileToPDFFolder Method

Splits PDF document by pages

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public int SplitPDFFileToPDFFolder(  
    string SourceFile,  
    string OutputPath  
)
```

## Parameters

*SourceFile* **String**

Path to PDF file which you want to split by pages

*OutputPath* **String**

Path to directory where to store each PDF page as single file after splitting

## Return Value

**Int32**

0 - split successfully

2 - error, output directory doesn't exist

## ▲ Example

```
using System;
using
System.IO;
using
System.Collec
tions;

namespace
Sample
{
    class
    Test
    {

        static void
        Main(string[]
        args)
        {

            // Activate
            your license
            here

            //
            SautinSoft.Pd
            fMetamorphosi
            s.SetLicense(
            "1234567890")
            ;

            SautinSoft.Pd
            fMetamorphosi
            s p = new
            SautinSoft.Pd
```

```
fMetamorphosis();
```

```
string  
rtfPath =  
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
```

```
string  
pdfPath =  
@"..\..\..\test.pdf";
```

```
// Let's  
create a PDF  
file from RTF  
file
```

```
p.PageSettings.Orientation  
=  
SautinSoft.Pd  
fMetamorphosis.  
PageSettings  
.Orientations  
.Landscape;
```

```
//Specify  
page numbers:  
{1 of N},  
font:  
Verdana, 18
```

```
p.PageSettings  
s.Numbering.T
```

```
ext = "{page}  
of  
{numpages}";
```

```
p.PageSetting  
s.Numbering.F  
ontFace =  
"Verdana";
```

```
p.PageSetting  
s.Numbering.F  
ontSize = 18;
```

```
p.RtfToPdfCon  
vertFile(rtfP  
ath,  
pdfPath);
```

```
#region split  
PDF file
```

```
//Split PDF  
by pages:  
1st, 2nd, 3rd  
...
```

```
p.SplitPDFFil  
eToPDFFolder(  
pdfPath,  
Path.GetDirec  
toryName(pdfP  
ath));
```

```
#endregion
```

```
#region merge  
PDF files
```

```
//Merge only  
1st and 3rd  
pages
```

```
string[]  
pdfFiles = {  
@"..\..\..\te  
st-  
00001.pdf",  
@"..\..\..\te  
st-00003.pdf"  
};
```

```
p.MergePDFFil  
eArrayToPDFFi  
le(pdfFiles,  
@"..\..\..\te  
st_Split_and_  
Merge_1and3pa  
ge.pdf");
```

```
#endregion
```

```
//Show merged  
PDF (it  
doesn't have  
2nd page)
```

```
System.Diagno  
stics.Process  
.Start(new  
System.Diagno
```

```

stics.Process
StartInfo(@"
..\..\..\test_
Split_and_Mer
ge_1and3page.
pdf") {
UseShellExecu
te = true });
    }
}
}

```

#### How to split and merge PDF documents using VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```
Imports System.IO
```

```
Module sample
```

```
    Sub Main()
```

```
        ' Activate your license here
        ,
```

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")
```

```
        Dim p As New
```

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()
```

```
        Dim rtfPath As String =
```

```
        "..\..\..\example.rtf"
```

```
        Dim pdfPath As String =
```

```
        "..\..\..\test.pdf"
```

```
        ' Let's create a PDF file from RTF
file
```

```
        p.PageSettings.Orientation =
```

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Landscape
```

```

        'Specify page numbers: {1 of N},
font: Verdana, 18
        p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text = "
{page} of {numpages}"
        p.PageSettings.Numbering.FontFace =
"Verdana"
        p.PageSettings.Numbering.FontSize =
18
        p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath,
pdfPath)

        'Split PDF by pages: 1st, 2nd, 3rd
...
        p.SplitPDFFileToPDFFolder(pdfPath,
Path.GetDirectoryName(pdfPath))

        'Merge only 1st and 3rd pages
        Dim pdfFiles() As String =
{"..\..\..\test-00001.pdf", "..\..\..\test-
00003.pdf"}

        p.MergePDFFileArrayToPDFFile(pdfFiles,
"..\..\..\test_Split_and_Merge_1and3page.pdf
")

        'Show merged PDF (it doesn't have
2nd page)
        System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo("..\..\..\
.\test_Split_and_Merge_1and3page.pdf") With
{.UseShellExecute = True})
    End Sub
End Module

```

## ▲ See Also

Reference



PdfMetamorphosis Class  
SautinSoft Namespace

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis TextToPdf ConvertByte Method

Converts array of Text bytes into array of PDF bytes.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public byte[] TextToPdfConvertByte(  
    byte[] inputBytes  
)
```

## Parameters

*inputBytes* **Byte**

Text document as bytes array

## Return Value

**Byte**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis TextToPdf ConvertFile Method

Converts a Text file to PDF file.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public int TextToPdfConvertFile(  
    string textPath,  
    string pdfPath  
)
```

## Parameters

*textPath* **String**

A local to path to a textual file.

*pdfPath* **String**

A local to path to the pdf file.

## Return Value

**Int32**

0 - converting successfully

3 - converting failed. (For details see: [Exception.](#)) ▲

## Example

How to convert Text file to PDF file in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            // Let's set: A4, Landscape
            orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
            Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
            p.PageSettings.Size.A4();
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
            ntations.Landscape;

            p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0f);

            if (p != null)
            {
```

```

        string textPath =
@"..\..\..\example.txt";
        string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(textPath, ".pdf");

        if
(p.TextToPdfConvertFile(textPath, pdfPath)
== 0)

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
        else
        {

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting Text to PDF!");
                Console.ReadLine();

        }
    }
}
}
}

```

#### How to convert Text file to PDF file in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Imports System
Imports System.IO

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            ;
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

```

```

        Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        ' Let's set: A4, Landscape
orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
        p.PageSettings.Size.A4()
        p.PageSettings.Orientation =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Landscape

p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5F)

p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5F)

p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0F)

p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0F)

        If p IsNot Nothing Then
            Dim textPath As String =
"...\\...\\...\\example.txt"
            Dim pdfPath As String =
Path.ChangeExtension(textPath, ".pdf")

            If
p.TextToPdfConvertFile(textPath, pdfPath) =
0 Then

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
            Else

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting Text to PDF!")

```

```
        Console.ReadLine()  
    End If  
End If  
End Sub  
End Class  
End Namespace
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosis TextToPdf ConvertStream Method

Convert the stream with Text document to a PDF stream.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public Stream TextToPdfConvertStream(  
    Stream inputStream  
)
```

## Parameters

*inputStream* **Stream**

Stream with Text document.

## Return Value

**Stream**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis TextToPdf ConvertStringToByte Method

Converts string of Text into array of PDF bytes.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public byte[] TextToPdfConvertStringToByte(  
    string text  
)
```

## Parameters

*text* **String**

Text document as string

## Return Value

**Byte**

PDF document as byte array, or null in case of converting failed

## ▲ Example

How to convert Text to PDF in memory using C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;  
using System.IO;  
using System.Collections;
```

```
namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            if (p != null)
            {
                string textPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.txt";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(textPath, ".pdf");
                string textString =
                File.ReadAllText(textPath);

                // 2. Convert Text to PDF in
                memory
                byte[] pdfBytes =
                p.TextToPdfConvertStringToByte(textString);

                if (pdfBytes != null)
                {
                    //3. Save the PDF
                    document to a file for a viewing purpose.
                    File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdfBytes);
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
    }
    else
    {

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting Text to PDF!");
    }
}
}
}
}
}
}

```

#### How to convert Text to PDF in memory using VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Imports System.IO

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            ,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            If p IsNot Nothing Then
                Dim textPath As String =
"..\\..\\..\\example.txt"
                Dim pdfPath As String =
Path.ChangeExtension(textPath, ".pdf")
                Dim textString As String =

```

```

File.ReadAllText(textPath)

        ' 2. Convert Text to PDF in
memory
        Dim pdfBytes() As Byte =
p.TextToPdfConvertStringToByte(textString)

        If pdfBytes IsNot Nothing
Then

                '3. Save the PDF
document to a file for a viewing purpose.
File.WriteAllBytes(pdfPath, pdfBytes)

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
        Else

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting Text to PDF!")
        End If
        End If
        End Sub
        End Class
End Namespace

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Headers Footers Class

Class to create a custom header and footer in produced PDF document in any of formats: Rtf, Html or Text.

## ▲ Inheritance Hierarchy **system Object**

**SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters**

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax


**C#**    **VB**

```
public class HeadersFooters
```

[Copy](#)

The **PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters** type exposes the following members.


## ▲ Constructors

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters</a>	Creates a new instance of the <b>PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters</b> class.

[Top](#)









## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	Y	Margin from top for header or margin from bottom for footer. Default value: 12.7 mm or 0.5 inches.

[Top](#)

## ▲ Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<a href="#">FromFile(String)</a>	Set header/footer from local RTF file
	<a href="#">FromFile(String, PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters InputFormat)</a>	Set header/footer from any DOCX, DOC, RTF, HTML or Text file.
	<a href="#">FromHtmlURL</a>	Set header/footer from HTML URL.
	<a href="#">FromStream</a>	Set header/footer from any DOCX, DOC, RTF, HTML or Text stream.
	<a href="#">FromString</a>	Set header/footer from any RTF, HTML or Text string. DOCX and DOC can't be loaded from the string

object. For DOCX and DOC format use [FromStream\(Stream, PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters InputFormat\)](#).



### GetHashCode

Serves as the default hash function.  
(Inherited from **Object**)



### GetType

Gets the **Type** of the current instance.  
(Inherited from **Object**)



### ToString

Returns a string that represents the current object.  
(Inherited from **Object**)

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisHeadersFooters Constructor

Creates a new instance of the [PdfMetamorphosisHeadersFooters](#) class.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public HeadersFooters()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisHeadersFooters Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---


[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# HeadersFooters Properties

The [PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	Y	Margin from top for header or margin from bottom for footer. Default value: 12.7 mm or 0.5 inches.

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Headers Footers Y Property

Margin from top for header or margin from bottom for footer.  
Default value: 12.7 mm or 0.5 inches.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Y { get; set; }
}
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)







[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# HeadersFooters Methods

The PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<a href="#">FromFile(String)</a>	Set header/footer from local RTF file
	<a href="#">FromFile(String, PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters InputFormat)</a>	Set header/footer from any DOCX, DOC, RTF, HTML or Text file.
	<a href="#">FromHtmlURL</a>	Set header/footer from HTML URL.
	<a href="#">FromStream</a>	Set header/footer from any DOCX, DOC, RTF, HTML or Text stream.
	<a href="#">FromString</a>	Set header/footer from any RTF, HTML or Text string. DOCX and DOC can't be loaded from the string object. For DOCX and DOC

format use  
[FromStream\(Stream,  
PdfMetamorphosis  
HeadersFooters  
InputFormat\).](#)



### **GetHashCode**

Serves as the default hash function.  
(Inherited from **Object**)



### **GetType**

Gets the **Type** of the current instance.  
(Inherited from **Object**)



### **ToString**

Returns a string that represents the current object.  
(Inherited from **Object**)

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)



[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Headers Footers FromFile Method

## ▲ Overload List

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">FromFile(String)</a>	Set header/footer from local RTF file
	<a href="#">FromFile(String, PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters InputFormat)</a>	Set header/footer from any DOCX, DOC, RTF, HTML or Text file.

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosis Headers Footers FromFile(String) Method

Set header/footer from local RTF file

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void FromFile(  
    string path  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

*path* **String**

Path to local RTF file

▲ **Remarks** This method is very usefull when you want to insert header/footer from existing RTF document.

## ▲ Example

How to add page header and footer using C#.

[Copy](#)

```

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            // How to change the page footer
            to the custom footer
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            if (p != null)
            {
                string inputFile =
                @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
                string originalPdf =
                @"..\..\..\Original.pdf";
                string customPdf =
                @"..\..\..\CustomFooter.pdf";

                // Let's convert RTF which
                has an own page footer to PDF
                if
                (p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(inputFile,
                originalPdf)==0)
                {

```

```

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(original
Pdf) { UseShellExecute = true });
    }

    // Let's change the footer
to custom
    string footerInHtml = "
<table width=\"100%\" border=\"1\"><tr><td
width=\"50%\"></td><td>This is new custom
footer!</td></tr></table>";

p.PageSettings.Footer.FromString(footerInHtml,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.InputFormat.Html);

    // Let's convert RTF to PDF
and change the footer to the custom
    if
(p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(inputFile, customPdf)
== 0)
    {

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(customPdf) { UseShellExecute = true });
    }
    }
}
}
}

```

Module sample

```
Sub Main()  
  
    'How to change the page footer to  
    the custom footer  
        ' Activate your license here  
        ,  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234  
567890")  
  
    Dim p As New  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()  
  
    If p IsNot Nothing Then  
        Dim inputFile As String =  
        "..\..\..\example.rtf"  
        Dim originalPdf As String =  
        "..\..\..\Original.pdf"  
        Dim customPdf As String =  
        "..\..\..\CustomFooter.pdf"  
  
        'Let's convert RTF which has a  
        page footer to PDF  
        If  
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(inputFile,  
originalPdf) = 0 Then  
  
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New  
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(original  
Pdf) With {.UseShellExecute = True})  
        End If  
  
        'Let's change footer to the  
        custom  
        Dim footerInHtml As String = "
```

```
<table width=""100%"" border=""1""><tr><td width=""50%""></td><td>This is new custom footer!</td></tr></table>
```

```
p.PageSettings.Footer.FromString(footerInHtml,  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.InputFormat.Html)
```

```
'Let's convert RTF which has a  
page footer to PDF
```

```
If
```

```
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(inputFile, customPdf)  
= 0 Then
```

```
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New  
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(customPdf)  
f) With {.UseShellExecute = True})
```

```
End If
```

```
End If
```

```
End Sub
```

```
End Module
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters Class](#)

[FromFile Overload](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Headers Footers FromFile(String, Pdf Metamorphosis Headers Footers InputFormat) Method

Set header/footer from any DOCX, DOC, RTF, HTML or Text file.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public void FromFile(  
    string path,  
    PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters  
    InputFormat inputFormat  
)
```

## Parameters

*path* **String**

Path to local file.

*inputFormat* [PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters InputFormat](#)

Allows you to specify the input format for header and footer.

▲ **Remarks** We don't recommend to use it for complex HTML documents as header or footer. The best is using simple HTML table with text and images as header/footer.

## ▲ Example

How to add page header and footer using C#.

[Copy](#)

```
using System.IO;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            //How to add page header and
            footer
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            //Let's add page header in HTML
            format
            string headerInHtml = "<table
            width=\"100%\" border=\"0\" style=\"border-
            collapse: collapse\"><tr><td style=\"border:
            1pt solid black\" ></td><td width=\"50%\"
            align=\"center\" style=\"border: 1pt solid
            black\">You are welcome!</td></tr></table>";
```

```
p.PageSettings.Header.FromString(headerInHtml,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.InputFormat.Html);
```

```
    string footerInRtf = @"{\rtf1\i
Italic footer }";
```

```
p.PageSettings.Footer.FromString(footerInRtf,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.InputFormat.Rtf);
```

```
    if (p != null)
    {
        string inputFile =
@"..\..\..\example.htm";
        string outputFile =
Path.ChangeExtension(inputFile, ".pdf");
```

```
        int result =
p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(inputFile,
outputFile);
```

```
        if (result == 0)
        {
```

```
System.Console.WriteLine("Converted
successfully!");
```

```
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(outputFile) { UseShellExecute = true });
    }
    else
    {
```



```

System.Console.WriteLine("Converting
Error!");
    }
}
}
}
}
}
}

```

#### How to add page header and footer using VB.Net.

[Copy](#)

Module sample

Sub Main()

```

    'How to add page header and footer
    ' Activate your license here
    ,

```

```

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

```

Dim p As New

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

```

    'Let's add page header in HTML
format

```

```

    Dim headerInHtml As String = "<table
width=\"100%\" border=\"0\" style=\"border-
collapse: collapse\"><tr><td style=\"border:
1pt solid black\" ></td><td width=\"50%\"
align=\"center\" style=\"border: 1pt solid
black\">You are welcome!</td></tr></table>"

```

```

p.PageSettings.Header.FromString(headerInHtml,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.InputFormat.Html)

```

```

        Dim footerInRtf As String = "
{\rtf1\i Italic Footer}"

p.PageSettings.Footer.FromString(footerInRtf
/
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I
nputFormat.Rtf)

        If p IsNot Nothing Then
            Dim inputFile As String =
"..\\..\\..\\example.htm"
            Dim outputFile As String =
"..\\..\\..\\test.pdf"

            Dim result As Integer =
p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(inputFile,
outputFile)

            If result = 0 Then

System.Console.WriteLine("Converted
successfully!")

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(outputFi
le) With {.UseShellExecute = True})
            Else

System.Console.WriteLine("Converting
Error!")

            End If
        End If
    End Sub
End Module

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters Class](#)  
[FromFile Overload](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Headers Footers FromHtmlURL Method

Set header/footer from HTML URL.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public void FromHtmlURL(  
    string url  
)
```

## Parameters

*url* **String**

URL as string

▲ **Remarks** We don't recommend to use it for complex HTML documents. The best is using a simple HTML table with text and images as header/footer.

## ▲ Example

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p = new  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();
```

```
p.PageSettings.Header.FromHtmlURL(@"http://mysite.com/header.htm");
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Headers Footers FromStream Method

Set header/footer from any DOCX, DOC, RTF, HTML or Text stream.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void FromStream(  
    Stream stream,  
    PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters  
    InputFormat inputFormat  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

*stream* **Stream**

Stream of file.

*inputFormat* [PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters InputFormat](#)

Allows you to specify the input format for header and footer.

▲ **Remarks** We don't recommend to use it for complex HTML documents as header or footer. The best is using simple HTML table with text and images as header/footer.

## Example

How to add page header and footer.

[Copy](#)

```
using System.IO;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            //How to add page header and
            footer
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            //Let's add page header in HTML
            format
            string headerInHtml = "<table
            width=\"100%\" border=\"0\" style=\"border-
            collapse: collapse\"><tr><td style=\"border:
            1pt solid black\" ></td><td width=\"50%\"
            align=\"center\" style=\"border: 1pt solid
            black\">You are welcome!</td></tr></table>";

            p.PageSettings.Header.FromString(headerInHtml,
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I
            nputFormat.Html);
```

```

        string footerInRtf = @"{\rtf1\i
Italic footer }";

p.PageSettings.Footer.FromString(footerInRtf
,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I
nputFormat.Rtf);

        if (p != null)
        {
            string inputFile =
@"..\..\..\example.htm";
            string outputFile =
Path.ChangeExtension(inputFile, ".pdf");

            int result =
p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(inputFile,
outputFile);

            if (result == 0)
            {

System.Console.WriteLine("Converted
successfully!");

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(outputFi
le) { UseShellExecute = true });
            }
            else
            {

System.Console.WriteLine("Converting
Error!");
            }
        }
    }

```



```
}  
}  
}
```

#### How to add page header and footer.

[Copy](#)

**Module** sample

**Sub** Main()

```
'How to add page header and footer  
' Activate your license here  
,
```

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234  
567890")
```

**Dim** p **As** New

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

```
'Let's add page header in HTML  
format
```

```
Dim headerInHtml As String = "<table  
width=\"100%\" border=\"0\" style=\"border-  
collapse: collapse\"><tr><td style=\"border:  
1pt solid black\" ></td><td width=\"50%\"  
align=\"center\" style=\"border: 1pt solid  
black\">You are welcome!</td></tr></table>"
```

```
p.PageSettings.Header.FromString(headerInHtml,  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.InputFormat.Html)
```

```
Dim footerInRtf As String = "  
{\rtf1\i Italic Footer}"
```

```
p.PageSettings.Footer.FromString(footerInRtf
```

```

'SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.InputFormat.Rtf)

        If p IsNot Nothing Then
            Dim inputFile As String =
                "..\..\..\example.htm"
            Dim outputFile As String =
                "..\..\..\test.pdf"

            Dim result As Integer =
                p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(inputFile,
                    outputFile)

            If result = 0 Then

                System.Console.WriteLine("Converted
                successfully!")

                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
                System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(outputFi
                le) With {.UseShellExecute = True})
            Else

                System.Console.WriteLine("Converting
                Error!")
            End If
        End If
    End Sub
End Module

```

## [▲ See Also](#)

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Headers Footers FromString Method

Set header/footer from any RTF, HTML or Text string. DOCX and DOC can't be loaded from the string object. For DOCX and DOC format use [FromStream\(Stream, PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters InputFormat\)](#).

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public void FromString(  
    string str,  
    PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters  
    InputFormat inputFormat  
)
```

## Parameters

*str* **String**

String of file.

*inputFormat* [PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters InputFormat](#)

Allows you to specify the input format for header and footer.

▲ **Remarks** We don't recommend to use it for complex HTML documents as header or footer. The best is using simple

HTML table with text and images as header/footer.

## Example

How to add page header and footer.

[Copy](#)

```
using System.IO;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            //How to add page header and
            footer
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            //Let's add page header in HTML
            format
            string headerInHtml = "<table
            width=\"100%\" border=\"0\" style=\"border-
            collapse: collapse\"><tr><td style=\"border:
            1pt solid black\" ></td><td width=\"50%\"
            align=\"center\" style=\"border: 1pt solid
            black\">You are welcome!</td></tr></table>";

            p.PageSettings.Header.FromString(headerInHtml
            ,
```

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I  
nputFormat.Html);
```

```
        string footerInRtf = @"{\rtf1\i  
Italic footer }";
```

```
p.PageSettings.Footer.FromString(footerInRtf  
,  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I  
nputFormat.Rtf);
```

```
        if (p != null)  
{  
            string inputFile =  
@"..\..\..\example.htm";  
            string outputFile =  
Path.ChangeExtension(inputFile, ".pdf");
```

```
            int result =  
p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(inputFile,  
outputFile);
```

```
            if (result == 0)  
{
```

```
System.Console.WriteLine("Converted  
successfully!");
```

```
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new  
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(outputFi  
le) { UseShellExecute = true });  
        }  
        else  
        {
```

```
System.Console.WriteLine("Converting  
Error!");
```

```

    }
  }
}

```

#### How to add page header and footer.

[Copy](#)

**Module** sample

**Sub** Main()

```

    'How to add page header and footer
    ' Activate your license here
    ,

```

```

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

```

**Dim** p **As** **New**

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

```

    'Let's add page header in HTML

```

**format**

```

    Dim headerInHtml As String = "<table
width=\"100%\" border=\"0\" style=\"border-
collapse: collapse\"><tr><td style=\"border:
1pt solid black\" ></td><td width=\"50%\"
align=\"center\" style=\"border: 1pt solid
black\">You are welcome!</td></tr></table>"

```

```

p.PageSettings.Header.FromString(headerInHtml,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.InputFormat.Html)

```

```

    Dim footerInRtf As String = "
{\rtf1\i Italic Footer}"

```

```

p.PageSettings.Footer.FromString(footerInRtf
/
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I
nputFormat.Rtf)

    If p IsNot Nothing Then
        Dim inputFile As String =
            "..\..\..\example.htm"
        Dim outputFile As String =
            "..\..\..\test.pdf"

        Dim result As Integer =
            p.HtmlToPdfConvertFile(inputFile,
            outputFile)

        If result = 0 Then

            System.Console.WriteLine("Converted
            successfully!")

            System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
            System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(outputFi
            le) With {.UseShellExecute = True})
        Else

            System.Console.WriteLine("Converting
            Error!")
        End If
    End If
End Sub
End Module

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters Class](#)



SautinSoft Namespace

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Headers Footers InputFormat Enumeration

Allows you to specify the input format for header and footer.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▴ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public enum InputFormat
```

[Copy](#)

## ▴ Members

Member name	Value	Description
Docx	0	Input DocX format
Rtf	1	Input Rtf format
Html	2	Input Html format
Text	3	Input Text format
Doc	4	Input Doc format

## ▴ See Also

Reference  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis HtmlSetting Class

Set options necessary for HTML to PDF conversion, such as BaseUrl etc.

## ▲ Inheritance Hierarchy **system Object**

SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis HtmlSetting

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax


C# VB

```
public class HtmlSetting
```

[Copy](#)


The PdfMetamorphosis HtmlSetting type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Constructors

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis HtmlSetting</a>	Creates an instance of the PdfMetamorphosis HtmlSetting object





[Top](#)

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">BaseUrl</a>	The part of document's URL preceding its name. Default value: <b>Empty</b> .

[Top](#)

## ▲ Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisHtmlSetting Constructor

Creates an instance of the [PdfMetamorphosisHtmlSetting](#) object

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public HtmlSetting()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisHtmlSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)


[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# HtmlSetting Properties

The [PdfMetamorphosisHtmlSetting](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">BaseUrl</a>	The part of document's URL preceding its name. Default value: <b>Empty</b> .

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisHtmlSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosis HtmlSetting BaseUrl Property

The part of document's URL preceding its name. Default value: **Empty**.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public string BaseUrl { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

## Property Value

**string** ▲ **Remarks** URL assigned to a page to convert "relative URLs" into "absolute URLs" by the addition of a document name or trailing slash /.

It's very important to set this property when converting HTML document in memory in order to determine where all relative URLs are pointing to and convert them to absolute.

For example, let's convert HTML string to a PDF file.

Assuming we've specified:

```
p.HtmlOptions.BaseUrl = @"d:\my webs";
```

Now when the component meets 'src="images/asterisk.jpg"' it will try to load an image from: "d:\my webs\images\asterisk.jpg"

## ▲ Example

Using the property `BaseUrl` in ASP.Net application using C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.Data;
using System.Configuration;
using System.Web;
using System.Web.Security;
using System.Web.UI;
using System.Web.UI.WebControls;
using System.Web.UI.WebControls.WebParts;
using System.Web.UI.HtmlControls;
using System.IO;
using System.Net;

public partial class _Default :
    System.Web.UI.Page
{
    protected void Page_Load(object sender,
    EventArgs e)
    {
        Result.Text = "";
    }

    protected void Button1_Click(object
    sender, EventArgs e)
    {
        // Activate your license here
        //
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
        567890");

        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p = new
```

```

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

    // Let's set page numbers
    p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =
"Page {page} of {numpages}";

    // Set page header within HTML
string
    p.PageSettings.Header.FromString("
<table border=\"1\"><tr><td>We added this
header using the property \"Header.Html\"
</td></tr></table>",
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I
nputFormat.Html);

    // Add page footer from HTML file

p.PageSettings.Footer.FromFile(Path.Combine(
Server.MapPath(""), @"footer.htm"),
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I
nputFormat.Html);

    // Get content of the ASPX page as
HTML document
    string htmlString =
GetHtmlFromAspx(Path.Combine(Server.MapPath(
""), @"Default.aspx"));

    p.HtmlSettings.BaseUrl =
Server.MapPath("");

    byte[] pdfBytes =
p.HtmlToPdfConvertStringToByte(htmlString);

    //show PDF
    if (pdfBytes != null)
    {

```

```

        Response.Buffer = true;
        Response.Clear();
        Response.ContentType =
"application/PDF";
        Response.BinaryWrite(pdfBytes);
        Response.Flush();
        Response.End();
    }
    else
    {
        Result.Text = "Converting
failed!";
    }
}

public static string
GetHtmlFromAspx(string url)
{
    string contents = "";
    string urlpage =
HttpContext.Current.Request.Url.AbsoluteUri;

    Stream StreamHttp = null;
    WebResponse resp = null;
    HttpWebRequest webrequest = null;

    webrequest =
(HttpWebRequest)WebRequest.Create(urlpage);
    webrequest.UserAgent =
"Mozilla/4.0 (compatible; MSIE 6.0; Windows
NT 5.0; .NET CLR 1.1.4322)";
    resp = webrequest.GetResponse();
    StreamHttp =
resp.GetResponseStream();
    StreamReader sr = new
StreamReader(StreamHttp);
    contents = sr.ReadToEnd();
}

```

```
        return contents;

    }}

```

#### Using the property BaseUrl in ASP.Net application using VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```
Imports System
Imports System.Data
Imports System.Configuration
Imports System.Web
Imports System.Web.Security
Imports System.Web.UI
Imports System.Web.UI.WebControls
Imports System.Web.UI.WebControls.WebParts
Imports System.Web.UI.HtmlControls
Imports System.IO
Imports System.Net

Partial Public Class _Default
    Inherits System.Web.UI.Page

    Protected Sub Page_Load(ByVal sender As
Object, ByVal e As EventArgs)

        End Sub

    Protected Sub Button1_Click(ByVal sender
As Object, ByVal e As EventArgs)

        ' Activate your license here
        ,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")
        Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        ' Let's set page numbers

```

```

        p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =
"Page {page} of {numpages}"

        ' Set page header within HTML string
        p.PageSettings.Header.FromString("
<table border=""1""><tr><td>We added this
header using the property ""Header.Html""
</td></tr></table>",
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I
nputFormat.Html)

        ' Add page footer from HTML file

p.PageSettings.Footer.FromFile(Path.Combine(
Server.MapPath(""), "footer.htm"),
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.HeadersFooters.I
nputFormat.Html)

        ' Get content of the ASPX page as
HTML document
        Dim htmlString As String =
GetHtmlFromAspx(Path.Combine(Server.MapPath(
""), "Default.aspx"))

        p.HtmlSettings.BaseUrl =
Server.MapPath("")

        Dim pdfBytes() As Byte =
p.HtmlToPdfConvertStringToByte(htmlString)

        'show PDF
        If pdfBytes IsNot Nothing Then
            Response.Buffer = True
            Response.Clear()
            Response.ContentType =
"application/PDF"
            Response.BinaryWrite(pdfBytes)

```

```

        Response.Flush()
        Response.End()
    Else

        End If
    End Sub
    Public Shared Function
GetHtmlFromAspx(ByVal url As String) As
String
        Dim contents As String = ""
        Dim urlpage As String =
HttpContext.Current.Request.Url.AbsoluteUri

        Dim StreamHttp As Stream = Nothing
        Dim resp As WebResponse = Nothing
        Dim webrequest As HttpWebRequest =
Nothing

        webrequest =
CType(WebRequest.Create(urlpage),
HttpWebRequest)
        webrequest.UserAgent =
"Mozilla/4.0 (compatible; MSIE 6.0; Windows
NT 5.0; .NET CLR 1.1.4322)"
        resp = webrequest.GetResponse()
        StreamHttp =
resp.GetResponseStream()
        Dim sr As New
StreamReader(StreamHttp)
        contents = sr.ReadToEnd()
        Return contents

    End Function
End Class

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis HtmlSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)





Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# HtmlSetting Methods

The [PdfMetamorphosis HtmlSetting](#) type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis HtmlSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting Class

Set different page properties. For example, set page size, margins, page numbers and add watermarks on page.

## ▴ Inheritance Hierarchy **system Object**

**SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting**

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▴ Syntax



**C#**    **VB**








```
public class PageSetting
```

[Copy](#)

The **PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting** type exposes the following members.

## ▴ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Footer</a>	Set a page footer in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.
	<a href="#">FooterOnEvenPage</a>	Set a page footer on even

		page in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.
	FooterOnFirstPage	Set a page footer on first page in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.
	Header	Set a page header in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.
	HeaderOnEvenPage	Setup a header on even page in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.
	HeaderOnFirstPage	Setup a header on first page in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.
	MarginBottom	Set bottom page margin. Default values: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document</li> <li>2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm</li> </ol>
	MarginLeft	Set left page margin. Default values: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document.</li> <li>2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm</li> </ol>
	MarginRight	Set right page margin. Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document.
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm



## MarginTop

Set top page margin.

Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm



## Numbering

Set a custom page numbers in produced document.



## Orientation

Set page orientation (Landscape or Portrait).

Default values: [Auto](#).







## Size

Set page size (A0,A1,A2,A3,A4,A5,A6 etc) for the PDF document. Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document
2. Text, HTML to PDF: Letter

[Top](#)

## ▲ Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)








[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PageSetting Properties

The [PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Footer</a>	Set a page footer in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.
	<a href="#">FooterOnEvenPage</a>	Set a page footer on even page in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.
	<a href="#">FooterOnFirstPage</a>	Set a page footer on first page in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.
	<a href="#">Header</a>	Set a page header in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.
	<a href="#">HeaderOnEvenPage</a>	Setup a header on even page in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.
	<a href="#">HeaderOnFirstPage</a>	Setup a header on first page in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.
	<a href="#">MarginBottom</a>	Set bottom page margin.

Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm



### MarginLeft

Set left page margin.

Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document.
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm



### MarginRight

Set right page margin.

Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document.
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm



### MarginTop

Set top page margin.

Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm



### Numbering

Set a custom page numbers in produced document.



### Orientation

Set page orientation



(Landscape or Portrait).  
Default values: [Auto](#).



## Size

Set page size  
(A0,A1,A2,A3,A4,A5,A6  
etc) for the PDF  
document. Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to  
PDF: The same as in  
a source document
2. Text, HTML to PDF:  
Letter

---

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting Footer Property

Set a page footer in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters  
Footer { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting FooterOnEvenPage Property

Set a page footer on even page in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters  
FooterOnEvenPage { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting FooterOnFirstPage Property

Set a page footer on first page in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters  
FooterOnFirstPage { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting Header Property

Set a page header in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters  
Header { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting HeaderOnEvenPage Property

Setup a header on even page in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters  
HeaderOnEvenPage { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting HeaderOnFirstPage Property

Setup a header on first page in any format from: Html, Rtf or Text.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters  
HeaderOnFirstPage { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis HeadersFooters](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting MarginBottom Property

Set bottom page margin. Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins  
MarginBottom { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins](#)

## ▲ Remarks Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm

## ▲ Example

How to set page size, orientation and margins in C#

[Copy](#)



```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            //How to set page size,
            orientation and margins
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            //Let's set: A3, Landscape
            orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
            Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
            p.PageSettings.Size.A3();
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
            ntations.Landscape;

            p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0f);
```

```

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

            int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

            if (i != 0)
            {
                System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
                during converting RTF to PDF!");
            }
            else
            {
                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
                System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
                { UseShellExecute = true });
            }
        }
    }
}

```

#### How to set page size, orientation and margins in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```
Module sample
```

```
    Sub Main()
```

```
        'How to set page size, orientation
        and margins
    
```

```

        ' Activate your license here
        ,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

    Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        'Let's set: A3, Landscape
orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
        p.PageSettings.Size.A3()
        p.PageSettings.Orientation =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Landscape
        p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5F)

p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5F)
        p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0F)

p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0F)

    If p IsNot Nothing Then
        Dim rtfPath As String =
        "...\\...\\...\\example.rtf"
        Dim pdfPath As String =
        "...\\...\\...\\test.pdf"

        Dim i As Integer =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

        If i <> 0 Then
            System.Console.WriteLine("An
error occurred during converting RTF to
PDF!")
        Else

```

```
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New  
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)  
With {.UseShellExecute = True})  
End If  
End If  
End Sub  
End Module
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting MarginLeft Property

Set left page margin. Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document.
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins  
MarginLeft { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins](#)

## ▲ Remarks

Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document.
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm

## ▲ See Also

Reference

PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class  
SautinSoft Namespace

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting MarginRight Property

Set right page margin. Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document.
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins  
MarginRight { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins](#)

## ▲ Remarks Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document.
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm

## ▲ Example

How to set page size, orientation and margins in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            //How to set page size,
            orientation and margins
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            //Let's set: A3, Landscape
            orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
            Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
            p.PageSettings.Size.A3();
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
            ntations.Landscape;

            p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0f);
```



```

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

            int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

            if (i != 0)
            {
                System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
                during converting RTF to PDF!");
            }
            else
            {
                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
                System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
                { UseShellExecute = true });
            }
        }
    }
}

```

#### How to set page size, orientation and margins in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```
Module sample
```

```
    Sub Main()
```

```
        'How to set page size, orientation
        and margins
    
```

```

        ' Activate your license here
        ,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

    Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        'Let's set: A3, Landscape
orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
        p.PageSettings.Size.A3()
        p.PageSettings.Orientation =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Landscape
        p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5F)

p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5F)
        p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0F)

p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0F)

    If p IsNot Nothing Then
        Dim rtfPath As String =
        "..\..\..\example.rtf"
        Dim pdfPath As String =
        "..\..\..\test.pdf"

        Dim i As Integer =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

        If i <> 0 Then
            System.Console.WriteLine("An
error occurred during converting RTF to
PDF!")
        Else

```

```
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
        End If
    End If
End Sub
End Module
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting MarginTop Property

Set top page margin. Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins  
MarginTop { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins](#)

## ▲ Remarks Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document
2. Text, HTML to PDF: 10 mm

## ▲ Example

How to set page size, orientation and margins in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            //How to set page size,
            orientation and margins
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            //Let's set: A3, Landscape
            orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
            Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
            p.PageSettings.Size.A3();
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
            ntations.Landscape;

            p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0f);
```

```

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

            int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

            if (i != 0)
            {
                System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
                during converting RTF to PDF!");
            }
            else
            {
                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
                System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
                { UseShellExecute = true });
            }
        }
    }
}

```

#### How to set page size, orientation and margins in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```
Module sample
```

```
    Sub Main()
```

```
        'How to set page size, orientation
        and margins
    
```

```

        ' Activate your license here
        ,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

    Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        'Let's set: A3, Landscape
orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
        p.PageSettings.Size.A3()
        p.PageSettings.Orientation =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Landscape
        p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5F)

p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5F)
        p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0F)

p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0F)

    If p IsNot Nothing Then
        Dim rtfPath As String =
"..\..\..\example.rtf"
        Dim pdfPath As String =
"..\..\..\test.pdf"

        Dim i As Integer =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

        If i <> 0 Then
            System.Console.WriteLine("An
error occurred during converting RTF to
PDF!")
        Else

```

```
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
        End If
    End If
End Sub
End Module
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting Numbering Property

Set a custom page numbers in produced document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting  
PageNumbers Numbering { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting Orientation Property

Set page orientation (Landscape or Portrait). Default values: [Auto](#).

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting
Orientations Orientation { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Orientations](#)

## ▲ Example

How to set page size, orientation and margins in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
```

```

static void Main(string[] args)
{
    // Activate your license here
    //
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890");

    //How to set page size,
orientation and margins
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

    //Let's set: A3, Landscape
orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
    p.PageSettings.Size.A3();
    p.PageSettings.Orientation =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Landscape;

p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5f);

p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5f);

p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0f);

p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0f);

    if (p != null)
    {
        string rtfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
        string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

        int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

```

```

        if (i != 0)
        {
            System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
            during converting RTF to PDF!");
        }
        else
        {
            System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
            System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
            { UseShellExecute = true });
        }
    }
}
}
}

```

#### How to set page size, orientation and margins in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

Module sample

```

    Sub Main()

        'How to set page size, orientation
        and margins
        ' Activate your license here
        ,
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
        567890")

        Dim p As New
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        'Let's set: A3, Landscape
        orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
    
```

```

Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
    p.PageSettings.Size.A3()
    p.PageSettings.Orientation =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Landscape
    p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5F)

p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5F)
    p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0F)

p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0F)

    If p IsNot Nothing Then
        Dim rtfPath As String =
"...\\...\\...\\example.rtf"
        Dim pdfPath As String =
"...\\...\\...\\test.pdf"

        Dim i As Integer =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

        If i <> 0 Then
            System.Console.WriteLine("An
error occurred during converting RTF to
PDF!")
        Else

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
        End If
    End If
End Sub
End Module

```

▲ See Also

## Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting Size Property

Set page size (A0,A1,A2,A3,A4,A5,A6 etc) for the PDF document. Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document
2. Text, HTML to PDF: Letter

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting  
PageSizes Size { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageSizes](#)

## ▲ Remarks

Default values:

1. RTF, DOCX, DOC to PDF: The same as in a source document
2. Text, HTML to PDF: Letter

## ▲ Example

How to set page size, orientation and margins in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            //How to set page size,
            orientation and margins
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            //Let's set: A3, Landscape
            orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
            Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
            p.PageSettings.Size.A3();
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
            ntations.Landscape;

            p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0f);
```



```

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

            int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

            if (i != 0)
            {
                System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
                during converting RTF to PDF!");
            }
            else
            {
                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
                System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
                { UseShellExecute = true });
            }
        }
    }
}

```

#### How to set page size, orientation and margins in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```
Module sample
```

```
    Sub Main()
```

```
        'How to set page size, orientation
        and margins
    
```

```

        ' Activate your license here
        ,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

    Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        'Let's set: A3, Landscape
orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
        p.PageSettings.Size.A3()
        p.PageSettings.Orientation =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
ntations.Landscape
        p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5F)

p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5F)
        p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0F)

p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0F)

    If p IsNot Nothing Then
        Dim rtfPath As String =
        "...\\...\\...\\example.rtf"
        Dim pdfPath As String =
        "...\\...\\...\\test.pdf"

        Dim i As Integer =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

        If i <> 0 Then
            System.Console.WriteLine("An
error occurred during converting RTF to
PDF!")
        Else

```

```
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
        End If
    End If
End Sub
End Module
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---





[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PageSetting Methods

The [PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting](#) type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting Margins Class

Set page margins in inches or mm.

## ▲ Inheritance Hierarchy system Object SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax


**C#**    **VB**

```
public class Margins
```

[Copy](#)








The PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Constructors

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins</a>	Creates an instance of Margins class.

[Top](#)

## ▲ Methods

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Auto</a>	Set page margin by auto.
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<a href="#">Inch</a>	Set page margin in inches.
	<a href="#">Mm</a>	Set page margin in mm.
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingMargins Constructor

Creates an instance of Margins class.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public Margins()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingMargins Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)








Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# Margins Methods

The [PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins](#) type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Auto</a>	Set page margin by auto.
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<a href="#">Inch</a>	Set page margin in inches.
	<a href="#">Mm</a>	Set page margin in mm.
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPage SettingMarginsAuto Method

Set page margin by auto.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Auto()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingMargins Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting Margins Inch Method

Set page margin in inches.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Inch(  
    float value  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

*value* **Single**

Value in millimeters.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting Margins Mm Method

Set page margin in mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Mm(  
    float value  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

*value* **Single**

Value in millimeters.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting Margins Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting Orientations Enumeration

Set a page orientation of PDF document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public enum Orientations
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ Members

Member name	Value	Description
Portrait	0	Set portrait page orientation.
Landscape	1	Set landscape page orientation.
Auto	2	Page orientation the same as in a source document.

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting PageNumbers Class

Allows to set page numbers and their properties in PDF.

## ▲ Inheritance Hierarchy **system Object**

**SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers**

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax


**C#**    **VB**

```
public class PageNumbers
```

[Copy](#)

The **PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers** type exposes the following members.









## ▲ Constructors

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers</a>	Creates an instance of PageNumbers class.

[Top](#)







## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">FontColor</a>	Set a custom font color for page numbers. Default value: <b>Black</b> .
	<a href="#">FontFace</a>	Set a custom font face for page numbers. Default value: "Times New Roman".
	<a href="#">FontSize</a>	Set a custom font size for page numbers. Default value: 10.
	<a href="#">PosX</a>	Set a position by horizontal for page numbering string. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">PosY</a>	Set a position by vertical for page numbering string. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">StartingNumber</a>	Sets and gets the value for {page} field of <a href="#">Text</a> property. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">Text</a>	Set a custom page numbers in produced PDF document. Default value: "".
	<a href="#">TotalPages</a>	Sets and gets the value for {numpages} field of <a href="#">Text</a> property. Default value: 0.

[Top](#)

## ▲ Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageNumbersConstructor

Creates an instance of PageNumbers class.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PageNumbers()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageNumbers Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)








[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PageNumbers Properties

The [PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">FontColor</a>	Set a custom font color for page numbers. Default value: <b>Black</b> .
	<a href="#">FontFace</a>	Set a custom font face for page numbers. Default value: "Times New Roman".
	<a href="#">FontSize</a>	Set a custom font size for page numbers. Default value: 10.
	<a href="#">PosX</a>	Set a position by horizontal for page numbering string. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">PosY</a>	Set a position by vertical for page numbering string. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">StartingNumber</a>	Sets and gets the value for {page} field of <a href="#">Text</a> property. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">Text</a>	Set a custom page numbers in produced PDF document.

Default value: "".



## TotalPages

Sets and gets the value for {numpages} field of [Text](#) property. Default value: 0.

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting PageNumbers Font Color Property

Set a custom font color for page numbers. Default value: **Black**.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public Color FontColor { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

color ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting PageNumbers Font Face Property

Set a custom font face for page numbers. Default value: "Times New Roman".

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public string FontFace { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

**string** ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting PageNumbers FontSize Property

Set a custom font size for page numbers. Default value: 10.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public float FontSize { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

**single** ▲ **See Also**

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting PageNumbers PosX Property

Set a position by horizontal for page numbering string. Default value: 0.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis Sizes PosX { get;  
set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting PageNumbers PosY Property

Set a position by vertical for page numbering string. Default value: 0.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis Sizes PosY { get;  
set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting PageNumbers Starting Number Property

Sets and gets the value for {page} field of [Text](#) property. Default value: 0.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public int StartingNumber { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value  
**Int32**

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting PageNumbers Text Property

Set a custom page numbers in produced PDF document.  
Default value: "".

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public string Text { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

**string** ▲ **Remarks** Default value: empty string

Using this property you may set custom page numbers as you wish.

These are special keywords to custom page numbers:

**{page}** - current page number

**{numpages}** - total pages

## ▲ Example

How to set page numbers in the output PDF document using C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            // This sample shows how to
            specify page numbers
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            //Page 1 of N, position: 30 mm
            from the left of the page
            p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =
            "Page {page} of {numpages}";
            p.PageSettings.Numbering.PosX.Mm
            = 30;
            p.PageSettings.Numbering.PosY.Mm
            = 10;

            p.PageSettings.Numbering.FontFace = "Courier
            New";

            p.PageSettings.Numbering.FontSize = 22;
```

```

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.pdf";

            int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath,pdfPath);

            if (i !=0)
            {

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!");
            }
            else
            {

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
            }
        }
    }
}

```

How to set page numbers in the output PDF document using VB.Net

[Copy](#)

Module sample

Sub Main()

' This sample shows how to specify  
page numbers

' Activate your license here

```
'  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234  
567890")
```

```
Dim p As New  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()
```

```
'Page 1 of N, position: 30 mm from  
the left of the page
```

```
p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =  
"Page {page} of {numpages}"  
p.PageSettings.Numbering.PosX.Mm =  
30  
p.PageSettings.Numbering.PosY.Mm =  
10  
p.PageSettings.Numbering.FontFace =  
"Courier New"  
p.PageSettings.Numbering.FontSize =  
22
```

```
' This is page number N  
'p.PageSettings.Numbering.Text =  
"This is page number {page}"
```

```
If p IsNot Nothing Then  
Dim rtfPath As String =  
"..\\..\\..\\example.rtf"  
Dim pdfPath As String =  
"..\\..\\..\\test.pdf"
```

```
Dim i As Integer =  
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)
```

```
If i <> 0 Then  
System.Console.WriteLine("An  
error occurred during converting RTF to  
PDF!")
```

Else

```
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New  
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)  
With {.UseShellExecute = True})  
End If  
End If  
End Sub  
End Module
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting PageNumbers Total Pages Property

Sets and gets the value for {numpages} field of [Text](#) property.  
Default value: 0.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public int TotalPages { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value  
**Int32**

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---





[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PageNumbers Methods

The [PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers](#) type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageNumbers Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting PageSizes Class

Set page size of produced PDF document.

## ▴ Inheritance Hierarchy **System.Object**

**SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting**  
**PageSizes**

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▴ Syntax



**C#**   **VB**

```
public class PageSizes
```

[Copy](#)













The **PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting** **PageSizes** type exposes the following members.










## ▴ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Height</a>	Set a custom page height in inches, px or mm. Default value: 0 (Auto).
	<a href="#">Width</a>	Set a custom page width in inches, px or mm. Default value: 0 (Auto).

[Top](#)

## ▲ Methods

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">A0</a>	Set A0 page size, 841 x 1189 mm.
	<a href="#">A1</a>	Set A1 page size, 594 x 841 mm.
	<a href="#">A2</a>	Set A2 page size, 420 x 594 mm.
	<a href="#">A3</a>	Set A3 page size, 297 x 420 mm.
	<a href="#">A4</a>	Set A4 page size, 210 x 297 mm.
	<a href="#">A5</a>	Set A5 page size, 148 x 210 mm.
	<a href="#">A6</a>	Set A6 page size, 105 x 148 mm.
	<a href="#">Auto</a>	Use default page size.
	<a href="#">B5Iso</a>	Set B5Iso page size, 176 x 250 mm.
	<a href="#">B5Jis</a>	Set B5Jis page size, 182 x 257 mm.
	<a href="#">B6</a>	Set B6 page size, 128 x 182 mm.
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the

		specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>Executive</b>	Set Executive page size, 7.25 x 10.5 Inch.
	<b>Folio</b>	Set Folio page size, 210 x 330 mm.
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>Legal</b>	Set Legal page size, 8.5 x 14 Inch.
	<b>Letter</b>	Set Letter size, 8.5 x 11 Inch.
	<b>Oficio2</b>	Set Oficio2 page size, 8.5 x 13 Inch
	<b>Statement</b>	Set Statement page size, 5.5 x 8.5 Inch.
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## ▲ Example

How to set page size, orientation and margins in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            //How to set page size,
            orientation and margins
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            //Let's set: A3, Landscape
            orientation, left and right margins: 1.5
            Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch
            p.PageSettings.Size.A3();
            p.PageSettings.Orientation =
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie
            ntations.Landscape;

            p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0f);

            p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0f);
```

```

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

            int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

            if (i != 0)
            {
                System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
                during converting RTF to PDF!");
            }
            else
            {
                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
                System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
                { UseShellExecute = true });
            }
        }
    }
}

```

#### How to set page size, orientation and margins in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

Module sample

Sub Main()

'How to set page size, orientation  
and margins

' Activate your license here



```
'  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234  
567890")
```

```
Dim p As New  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()
```

```
'Let's set: A3, Landscape  
orientation, left and right margins: 1.5  
Inch, top and bottom: 1 Inch  
p.PageSettings.Size.A3()  
p.PageSettings.Orientation =  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PageSetting.Orie  
ntations.Landscape  
p.PageSettings.MarginLeft.Inch(1.5F)
```

```
p.PageSettings.MarginRight.Inch(1.5F)  
p.PageSettings.MarginTop.Inch(1.0F)
```

```
p.PageSettings.MarginBottom.Inch(1.0F)
```

```
If p IsNot Nothing Then  
Dim rtfPath As String =  
"..\\..\\..\\example.rtf"  
Dim pdfPath As String =  
"..\\..\\..\\test.pdf"
```

```
Dim i As Integer =  
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)
```

```
If i <> 0 Then  
System.Console.WriteLine("An  
error occurred during converting RTF to  
PDF!")
```

```
Else
```

```
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
```

```
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
    End If
End If
End Sub
End Module
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---



[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PageSizes Properties

The [PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageSizes](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Height</a>	Set a custom page height in inches, px or mm. Default value: 0 (Auto).
	<a href="#">Width</a>	Set a custom page width in inches, px or mm. Default value: 0 (Auto).

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageSizes Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting PageSizes Height Property

Set a custom page height in inches, px or mm. Default value: 0 (Auto).

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Height { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Page Setting PageSizes Width Property

Set a custom page width in inches, px or mm. Default value: 0 (Auto).

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Width { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)










[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)













Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PageSizes Methods

The PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageSizes type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	A0	Set A0 page size, 841 x 1189 mm.
	A1	Set A1 page size, 594 x 841 mm.
	A2	Set A2 page size, 420 x 594 mm.
	A3	Set A3 page size, 297 x 420 mm.
	A4	Set A4 page size, 210 x 297 mm.
	A5	Set A5 page size, 148 x 210 mm.
	A6	Set A6 page size, 105 x 148 mm.
	Auto	Use default page size.
	B5Iso	Set B5Iso page size, 176 x 250 mm.

	<b>B5Jis</b>	Set B5Jis page size, 182 x 257 mm.
	<b>B6</b>	Set B6 page size, 128 x 182 mm.
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>Executive</b>	Set Executive page size, 7.25 x 10.5 Inch.
	<b>Folio</b>	Set Folio page size, 210 x 330 mm.
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>Legal</b>	Set Legal page size, 8.5 x 14 Inch.
	<b>Letter</b>	Set Letter size, 8.5 x 11 Inch.
	<b>Oficio2</b>	Set Oficio2 page size, 8.5 x 13 Inch
	<b>Statement</b>	Set Statement page size, 5.5 x 8.5 Inch.
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object.

(Inherited from **Object**)

---

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosisPage SettingPageSizesA0 Method

Set A0 page size, 841 x 1189 mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void A0()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPage SettingPageSizesA1 Method

Set A1 page size, 594 x 841 mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void A1()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPage SettingPageSizesA2 Method

Set A2 page size, 420 x 594 mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void A2()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPage SettingPageSizesA3 Method

Set A3 page size, 297 x 420 mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void A3()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPage SettingPageSizesA4 Method

Set A4 page size, 210 x 297 mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void A4()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPage SettingPageSizesA5 Method

Set A5 page size, 148 x 210 mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void A5()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPage SettingPageSizesA6 Method

Set A6 page size, 105 x 148 mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void A6()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageSizes Auto Method

Use default page size.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Auto()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ Remarks

Default values:

1. RTF to PDF: The same page size as in a source document.
2. Text, HTML to PDF: Letter.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PageSetting PageSizes Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizesB5IsoMethod

Set B5Iso page size, 176 x 250 mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void B5Iso()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPage SettingPageSizesB5Jis Method

Set B5Jis page size, 182 x 257 mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void B5Jis()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPage SettingPageSizesB6 Method

Set B6 page size, 128 x 182 mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void B6()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizesExecutiveMethod

Set Executive page size, 7.25 x 10.5 Inch.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Executive()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPage SettingPageSizesFolio Method

Set Folio page size, 210 x 330 mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Folio()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosisPage SettingPageSizesLegal Method

Set Legal page size, 8.5 x 14 Inch.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Legal()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizesLetterMethod

Set Letter size, 8.5 x 11 Inch.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Letter()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizesOficio2Method

Set Oficio2 page size, 8.5 x 13 Inch

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Oficio2()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosisPage SettingPageSizesStatement Method

Set Statement page size, 5.5 x 8.5 Inch.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Statement()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisPageSettingPageSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfEncryptionAlgorithm Enumeration

Specifies the encryption algorithm to use for encrypting a PDF document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public enum PdfEncryptionAlgorithm
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ Members

Member name	Value	Description
RC4_40	0	RC4 encryption, key length of 40 bits.
RC4_128	1	RC4 encryption, key length of 128 bits.

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Pdf Permissions Enumeration

Specifies the operations that are allowed to a user on an encrypted PDF document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
[FlagsAttribute]
public enum PdfPermissions
```

## ▲ Members

Member name	Value	Description
DisallowAll	0	Disallows all operations on the PDF document. This is the default value.
Printing	4	Allows printing the document.
ModifyContents	8	Allows modifying the document's contents.
ContentCopy	16	Allows copying or

		otherwise extracting text and graphics from the document, including extraction for accessibility purposes.
ModifyAnnotations	32	Allows adding or modifying text annotations. When using RC4 40-bit encryption, this option also allows filling in form fields.
FillIn	256	Allows filling in forms and signing the document. When using RC4 40-bit encryption, this option is ignored and filling in form is allowed whenever <b>ModifyAnnotations</b> is set.
ContentCopyForAccessibility	512	Allows extract text and graphics in support of accessibility to disabled users or for other purposes. When using RC4 40-bit encryption, this option is ignored and accessibility is

		allowed whenever <b>ContentCopy</b> is set.
DocumentAssembly	1,024	Allows assembling the document: inserting, rotating, or deleting pages and creating navigation elements such as bookmarks or thumbnail images. When using RC4 40-bit encryption, this option is ignored and document assembly is allowed when <b>ModifyContents</b> is set.
HighResolutionPrinting	2,052	Allows printing the document to the highest resolution possible. When using RC4 40-bit encryption, this option is ignored and high resolution printing is allowed when <b>Printing</b> is set.
AllowAll	65,535	Allows all operations on the PDF document.

## ▲ See Also

Reference

SautinSoft Namespace

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity Class

Contains details for encrypting and access permissions for a PDF document, such as Password, Permissions etc.

## ▴ Inheritance Hierarchy **system Object**

[SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity](#)

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▴ Syntax



**C#**    **VB**

```
public class PdfSecurity
```

[Copy](#)

The [PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▴ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">EncryptionAlgorithm</a>	Specifies the encryption algorithm to use. The default value is <a href="#">RC4_40</a> .
	<a href="#">OwnerPassword</a>	Specifies the owner



password for the encrypted PDF document.



## Permissions

Specifies the operations that are allowed to a user on an encrypted PDF document. The default value is [DisallowAll](#).



## UserPassword

Specifies the user password required for opening the encrypted PDF document.

[Top](#)

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)





Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfSecurity Properties

The [PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">EncryptionAlgorithm</a>	Specifies the encryption algorithm to use. The default value is <a href="#">RC4_40</a> .
	<a href="#">OwnerPassword</a>	Specifies the owner password for the encrypted PDF document.
	<a href="#">Permissions</a>	Specifies the operations that are allowed to a user on an encrypted PDF document. The default value is <a href="#">DisallowAll</a> .
	<a href="#">UserPassword</a>	Specifies the user password required for opening the encrypted PDF document.

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity Class](#)

SautinSoft Namespace

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity EncryptionAlgorithm Property

Specifies the encryption algorithm to use. The default value is [RC4\\_40](#).

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis  
PdfEncryptionAlgorithm EncryptionAlgorithm {  
get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfEncryptionAlgorithm](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity OwnerPassword Property

Specifies the owner password for the encrypted PDF document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public string OwnerPassword { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

## string ▲ Remarks

The owner password allows the user to open an encrypted PDF document without any access restrictions specified in

### Permissions.

The owner password cannot be the same as the user password. If you don't specify an owner password, then the system will generate a random password when generating the PDF document.

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity Permissions Property

Specifies the operations that are allowed to a user on an encrypted PDF document. The default value is [DisallowAll](#).

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis PdfPermissions  
Permissions { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfPermissions](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity UserPassword Property

Specifies the user password required for opening the encrypted PDF document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public string UserPassword { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

## Property Value

### string ▲ Remarks

The user password will be required to open an encrypted PDF document for viewing. The permissions specified in **Permissions** will be enforced by the reader software.

The user password can be null or empty string, in this case no password will be required from the user when opening the PDF document. The user password cannot be the same as the owner password.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---





SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfSecurity Methods

The [PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity](#) type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting Class

Set properties for resulting PDF document, such as PDF version, compression etc.

## ▲ Inheritance Hierarchy **system Object**

**SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting**

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax


**C#**    **VB**








```
public class PdfSetting
```

[Copy](#)

The **PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting** type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

Name		Description
 <a href="#">ClipboardTextProtection</a>	Gets and sets the protection on copying of all text from PDF document through	

		clipboard. Default value: false.
	Compression	Allows to set compression type to change size of the PDF document. Default value: true.
	EmbedAllFonts	Embed all used fonts inside the PDF document. Default value: false.
	FontsDirectory	Full local path to fonts directory (any folder with *.ttf files). Default value: Fonts directory of the current OS.
	JpegQuality	Specify the image quality from 1 ... 100. Allows to reduce the size of PDF document due to loss of quality of embedded images. Default value: 90.
	PdfProducer	Set producer in an output document.
	PdfSecurity	Sets the password in the resulting file.
	PdfVersion	Set version for produced PDF document. Default value: <a href="#">PDF_14</a> .

[Top](#)

## ▲ Methods

	Name	Description
💡	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
💡	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
💡	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
💡	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## ▲ Example

How to set PDF version in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System.IO;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
```

```

    {
        // Activate your license here
        //
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
        567890");

        // How to set a version for the
        PDF document.
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
        new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

        // PDF Metamorphosis .Net
        generates PDF 1.4 document by default.
        // Let's change the PDF version
        to PDF_A.
        p.PdfSettings.PdfVersion =
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PdfSetting.PdfVe
        rsions.PDF_A1a;

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
            @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
            Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

            int i =
            p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

            if (i != 0)
            {
                System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
                during converting RTF to PDF!");
            }
            else

```



```

        {
System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
        }
    }
}
}
}

```

#### How to set PDF version in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)

            ' How to set a version for the
PDF document.
            ' Activate your license here
            ,

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            ' PDF Metamorphosis .Net
generates PDF 1.4 document by default.
            ' Let's change the PDF version
to PDF_A.
            p.PdfSettings.PdfVersion =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PdfSetting.PdfVe
rsions.PDF_A1a

            If p IsNot Nothing Then

```

```

        Dim rtfPath As String =
        "...\\...\\...\\example.rtf"
        Dim pdfPath As String =
        "...\\...\\...\\test.pdf"

        Dim i As Integer =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

        If i <> 0 Then

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!")
        Else

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
        End If
    End If
End Sub
End Class
End Namespace

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)






[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)




Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfSetting Properties

The [PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">ClipboardTextProtection</a>	Gets and sets the protection on copying of all text from PDF document through clipboard. Default value: false.
	<a href="#">Compression</a>	Allows to set compression type to change size of the PDF document. Default value: true.
	<a href="#">EmbedAllFonts</a>	Embed all used fonts inside the PDF document. Default value: false.
	<a href="#">FontsDirectory</a>	Full local path to fonts directory (any folder with *.ttf files). Default value: Fonts directory of the current OS.
	<a href="#">JpegQuality</a>	Specify the image

		quality from 1 ... 100. Allows to reduce the size of PDF document due to loss of quality of embedded images. Default value: 90.
	<a href="#">PdfProducer</a>	Set producer in an output document.
	<a href="#">PdfSecurity</a>	Sets the password in the resulting file.
	<a href="#">PdfVersion</a>	Set version for produced PDF document. Default value: <a href="#">PDF_14</a> .

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference  
[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting ClipboardTextProtection Property

Gets and sets the protection on copying of all text from PDF document through clipboard. Default value: false.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public bool ClipboardTextProtection { get;  
set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

**Boolean** ▲ **Remarks** In case of true, it's impossible to copy text to the clipboard from resulting PDF. Important: The PDF document can be displayed incorrectly in some editors and converted back to Word also incorrectly.

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting Compression Property

Allows to set compression type to change size of the PDF document. Default value: true.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public bool Compression { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

**Boolean** ▲ **See Also**

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting EmbedAllFonts Property

Embed all used fonts inside the PDF document. Default value: false.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public bool EmbedAllFonts { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

## Property Value

**Boolean** ▲ **Remarks** This makes the PDF document completely standalone and independent of fonts installed on the computer where the PDF document will be opened.

## ▲ Example

How to embed all fonts inside PDF document in C#

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
```

[Copy](#)



```

{
    static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Activate your license here
        //
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
        567890");

        // How to set a single font for
        the whole PDF document.
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
        new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

        // Let's make that the all text
        in PDF became in 'Courier New' font

        p.TextSettings.FontFace.Custom("Courier
        New");

        // Set also a single font size
        10
        p.TextSettings.FontSize = 10;

        // Set also single text color
        p.TextSettings.FontColor =
        System.Drawing.Color.FromArgb(33, 150, 150);

        // Embed all fonts inside PDF.
        p.PdfSettings.EmbedAllFonts =
        true;

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
            @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =

```

```

@"..\..\..\example.pdf";

        int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath,pdfPath);

        if (i !=0)
        {

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!");
        }
        else
        {

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
        }
    }
}
}
}

```

#### How to embed all fonts inside PDF document in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test

        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)
            ' Activate your license here
            ,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            ' How to set a single font for
the whole PDF document.

```

```

        Dim p As New
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        ' Let's make that the all text
        in PDF became in 'Courier New' font

        p.TextSettings.FontFace.Custom("Courier
        New")

        ' Set also a single font size 10
        p.TextSettings.FontSize = 10

        ' Set also single text color
        p.TextSettings.FontColor =
        System.Drawing.Color.FromArgb(33, 150, 150)

        ' Embed all fonts inside PDF.
        p.PdfSettings.EmbedAllFonts =
        True

        If p IsNot Nothing Then
            Dim rtfPath As String =
            "..\..\..\example.rtf"
            Dim pdfPath As String =
            "..\..\..\test.pdf"

            Dim i As Integer =
            p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

            If i <> 0 Then

                System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
                during converting RTF to PDF!")
            Else

                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
                System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)

```

```
With {.UseShellExecute = True})  
    End If  
End If  
End Sub  
End Class  
End Namespace
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting FontsDirectory Property

Full local path to fonts directory (any folder with \*.ttf files).  
Default value: Fonts directory of the current OS.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C# VB

```
public string FontsDirectory { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

## Property Value

**string** ▲ **Remarks** Advice for developers who creates ASP.Net or Silverlight projects:

Some hosting providers disables any access to windows directories. For example, GoDaddy doesn't allow to read directory "Windows\Fonts".

We recommend to create own "Fonts" directory in your project and copy \*.ttf files to it from "Windows\Fonts". You may copy only several fonts, but we recommend to put the font "Arial Unicode MS" - ARIALUNI.TTF anyway.

## ▲ Example

C# VB

[Copy](#)

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p = new  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();  
//p.PdfSettings.FontsDirectory =  
@"c:\windows\fonts\";  
p.PdfSettings.FontsDirectory =  
Path.Combine(Server.MapPath(""), @"Fonts\");
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting JpegQuality Property

Specify the image quality from 1 ... 100. Allows to reduce the size of PDF document due to loss of quality of embedded images. Default value: 90.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public int JpegQuality { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value  
**Int32**

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting PdfProducer Property

Set producer in an output document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public string PdfProducer { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

**string** ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting PdfSecurity Property

Sets the password in the resulting file.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity  
PdfSecurity { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSecurity](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting PdfVersion Property

Set version for produced PDF document. Default value: [PDF\\_14](#).

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting
PdfVersions PdfVersion { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting PdfVersions](#)

## ▲ Example

How to set PDF version in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System.IO;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
```

```

        // Activate your license here
        //
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890");

        // How to set a version for the
PDF document.
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

        // PDF Metamorphosis .Net
generates PDF 1.4 document by default.
        // Let's change the PDF version
to PDF_A.
        p.PdfSettings.PdfVersion =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PdfSetting.PdfVe
rsions.PDF_A1a;

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

            int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

            if (i != 0)
            {
                System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!");
            }
            else
            {

```

```

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
    }
}
}
}
}
}

```

#### How to set PDF version in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)

            ' How to set a version for the
PDF document.
            ' Activate your license here
            ,

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            ' PDF Metamorphosis .Net
generates PDF 1.4 document by default.
            ' Let's change the PDF version
to PDF_A.
            p.PdfSettings.PdfVersion =
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.PdfSetting.PdfVe
rsions.PDF_A1a

            If p IsNot Nothing Then
                Dim rtfPath As String =

```

```
"..\..\..\example.rtf"
        Dim pdfPath As String =
"..\..\..\test.pdf"

        Dim i As Integer =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

        If i <> 0 Then

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!")
        Else

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
        End If
    End If
End Sub
End Class
End Namespace
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---





[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfSetting Methods

The [PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting](#) type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis PdfSetting PdfVersions Enumeration

Allows to set PDF version

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public enum PdfVersions
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ Members

Member name	Value	Description
PDF_12	0	The output file will comply with the PDF 1.2 standard.
PDF_13	1	The output file will comply with the PDF 1.3 standard.
PDF_14	2	The output file will comply with the PDF 1.4 standard.
PDF_15	3	The output file will comply with the PDF 1.5 standard.
PDF_16	4	The output file will comply with the PDF 1.6 standard.



PDF_17	5	The output file will comply with the PDF 1.7 standard.
PDF_A1a	6	The output file will comply with the PDF/A-1a (see <a href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A">http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A</a> ) standard.
PDF_A1b	7	The output file will comply with the PDF/A-1b (see <a href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A">http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A</a> ) standard.
PDF_A2a	8	The output file will comply with the PDF/A-2a (see <a href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A">http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A</a> ) standard.
PDF_A2b	9	The output file will comply with the PDF/A-2b (see <a href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A">http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A</a> ) standard.
PDF_A2u	10	The output file will comply with the PDF/A-2u (see <a href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A">http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A</a> ) standard.
PDF_A3a	11	The output file will comply with the PDF/A-3a (see <a href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A">http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A</a> ) standard.
PDF_A3b	12	The output file will comply with the PDF/A-3b (see <a href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A">http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A</a> ) standard.

---

PDF\_A3u 13

The output file will comply with the PDF/A-3u (see <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PDF/A>) standard.

---

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Class

Class to set the component's options in inches, mm and pixels.

## ▲ Inheritance Hierarchy **System.Object**

**SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis Sizes**

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax


**C#**    **VB**

```
public class Sizes
```

[Copy](#)

The **PdfMetamorphosis Sizes** type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Constructors

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis Sizes</a>	Creates an instance of the Sizes class.

[Top](#)

## ▲ Properties

Name	Description
------	-------------



Inch

Value in inches.



Mm

Value in mm.



Pix

Value in pixels.


[Top](#)

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>FromInch</b>	Get Sizes object from inches.
	<b>FromMm</b>	Get Sizes object from mm.
	<b>FromPix</b>	Get Sizes object from pixes.
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## Operators

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Addition(PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes)</a>	Allows to concatenate two Sizes objects.

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisSizes Constructor

Creates an instance of the Sizes class.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public Sizes()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# Sizes Properties

The [PdfMetamorphosisSizes](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Inch</a>	Value in inches.
	<a href="#">Mm</a>	Value in mm.
	<a href="#">Pix</a>	Value in pixels.

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisSizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Inch Property

Value in inches.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public float Inch { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

**single** ▲ **See Also**

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Mm Property

Value in mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public float Mm { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

**single** ▲ **See Also**

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Pix Property

Value in pixels.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public float Pix { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

**single** ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)








[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# Sizes Methods

The PdfMetamorphosis Sizes type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<a href="#">FromInch</a>	Get Sizes object from inches.
	<a href="#">FromMm</a>	Get Sizes object from mm.
	<a href="#">FromPix</a>	Get Sizes object from pixes.
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Sizes From Inch Method

Get Sizes object from inches.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public static PdfMetamorphosis Sizes  
FromInch(  
    float inch  
)
```

## Parameters

*inch* **Single**

Value in inches.

## Return Value

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

Reference to the new Sizes.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Sizes From Mm Method

Get Sizes object from mm.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public static PdfMetamorphosis Sizes FromMm(  
    float mm  
)
```

## Parameters

*mm* **Single**

Value in millimeters.

## Return Value

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

Reference to the new Sizes.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosis Sizes From Pix Method

Get Sizes object from pixes.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public static PdfMetamorphosis Sizes  
FromPix(  
    float pix  
)
```

## Parameters

*pix* **Single**

Value in px.

## Return Value

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

Reference to the new Sizes.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)


SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# Sizes Operators

The [PdfMetamorphosisSizes](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Operators

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Addition(PdfMetamorphosisSizes, PdfMetamorphosisSizes)</a>	Allows to concatenate two Sizes objects.

---

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisSizes Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Addition Operator

Allows to concatenate two Sizes objects.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public static PdfMetamorphosis Sizes  
operator +(  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes sz1,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes sz2  
)
```

## Parameters

sz1 [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

Sizes object1.

sz2 [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

Sizes object2

## Return Value

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

Reference to the new Sizes.

## ▲ See Also

Reference

PdfMetamorphosis Sizes Class  
SautinSoft Namespace

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Class

Set a single font face, size, color and alignment for all text in PDF document.

## ▲ Inheritance Hierarchy **system Object**

**SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting**

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax


**C#**    **VB**

```
public class TextSetting
```

[Copy](#)






The **PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting** type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Constructors

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting</a>	Creates an instance of the <b>CTextStyle</b> class




[Top](#)

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Alignment</a>	Set a custom alignment for whole text in PDF document. Default option: <a href="#">Auto</a>
	<a href="#">FontColor</a>	Set single font color for all text in the PDF document. Default value: <b>Empty</b> .
	<a href="#">FontFace</a>	Set a single custom font for a whole text in PDF document. Default value: <a href="#">Auto</a> .
	<a href="#">FontSize</a>	Set single font size for all text in the PDF document. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">Scaling</a>	Allows to scale some text properties (the scaling of FontSize and TextWidth appears in future)

[Top](#)

## ▲ Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current

instance.  
(Inherited from **Object**)



## **ToString**

Returns a string that represents the current object.  
(Inherited from **Object**)

---

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosisTextSetting Constructor

Creates an instance of the [CTextStyle](#) class

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public TextSetting()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisTextSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)






[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# TextSetting Properties

The [PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Alignment</a>	Set a custom alignment for whole text in PDF document. Default option: <a href="#">Auto</a>
	<a href="#">FontColor</a>	Set single font color for all text in the PDF document. Default value: <b>Empty</b> .
	<a href="#">FontFace</a>	Set a single custom font for a whole text in PDF document. Default value: <a href="#">Auto</a> .
	<a href="#">FontSize</a>	Set single font size for all text in the PDF document. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">Scaling</a>	Allows to scale some text properties (the scaling of FontSize and TextWidth appears in future)

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Class](#)

SautinSoft Namespace

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Alignment Property

Set a custom alignment for whole text in PDF document. Default option: [Auto](#)

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting  
Alignments Alignment { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Alignments](#)

## ▲ Remarks

Default option: [Auto](#) . This means: Keep text alignment the same as in a source document.

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting FontColor Property

Set single font color for all text in the PDF document. Default value: **Empty**.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public Color FontColor { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

## Color ▲ Example

How to set single font for the PDF document in C#

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
        }
    }
}
```

[Copy](#)

```

//
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890");

// How to set a single font for
the whole PDF document.
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

// Let's make that the all text
in PDF became in 'Comic Sans MS' font
p.TextSettings.FontFace.Custom("Comic Sans
MS");

// Set also a single font size
10
p.TextSettings.FontSize = 10;

// Set also single text color
p.TextSettings.FontColor =
System.Drawing.Color.FromArgb(33, 150, 33);

if (p != null)
{
    string rtfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
    string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

    int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

    if (i != 0)
    {
        System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred

```

```

during converting RTF to PDF!");
        }
        else
        {

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
        }
    }
}
}

```

#### How to set single font for the PDF document in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)

            ' How to set a single font for
the whole PDF document.
            ' Activate your license here
            ,

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            ' Let's make that the all text
in PDF became in 'Comic Sans MS' font

p.TextSettings.FontFace.Custom("Comic Sans
MS")

```



```

        ' Set also a single font size 10
        p.TextSettings.FontSize = 10

        ' Set also single text color
        p.TextSettings.FontColor =
System.Drawing.Color.FromArgb(33, 150, 33)

        If p IsNot Nothing Then
            Dim rtfPath As String =
                "..\..\..\example.rtf"
            Dim pdfPath As String =
                "..\..\..\test.pdf"

            Dim i As Integer =
                p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

            If i <> 0 Then

                System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
                during converting RTF to PDF!")
            Else

                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
                System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
                With {.UseShellExecute = True})
            End If
        End If
    End Sub
End Class
End Namespace

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting FontFace Property

Set a single custom font for a whole text in PDF document.

Default value: [Auto](#).

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting
FontFaces FontFace { get; set; }
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting FontFaces](#)

## ▲ Remarks

Default value: [Auto](#).

This means that fonts in PDF will be same as in source document.

## ▲ Example

How to set single font for the PDF document in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
```

```

{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            // How to set a single font for
            the whole PDF document.
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            // Let's make that the all text
            in PDF became in 'Comic Sans MS' font

            p.TextSettings.FontFace.Custom("Comic Sans
            MS");

            // Set also a single font size
            10
            p.TextSettings.FontSize = 10;

            // Set also single text color
            p.TextSettings.FontColor =
            System.Drawing.Color.FromArgb(33, 150, 33);

            if (p != null)
            {
                string rtfPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

        int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath,pdfPath);

        if (i !=0)
        {

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!");
        }
        else
        {

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
        }
    }
}
}

```

#### How to set single font for the PDF document in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)

            ' How to set a single font for
the whole PDF document.
            ' Activate your license here
            ,

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

```

' Let's make that the all text  
in PDF became in 'Comic Sans MS' font

```
p.TextSettings.FontFace.Custom("Comic Sans  
MS")
```

```
' Set also a single font size 10  
p.TextSettings.FontSize = 10
```

```
' Set also single text color  
p.TextSettings.FontColor =  
System.Drawing.Color.FromArgb(33, 150, 33)
```

```
If p IsNot Nothing Then  
    Dim rtfPath As String =  
        "..\..\..\example.rtf"  
    Dim pdfPath As String =  
        "..\..\..\test.pdf"
```

```
    Dim i As Integer =  
    p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)
```

```
    If i <> 0 Then
```

```
        System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred  
        during converting RTF to PDF!")  
    Else
```

```
        System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New  
        System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)  
        With {.UseShellExecute = True})
```

```
    End If
```

```
End If
```

```
End Sub
```

```
End Class
```

```
End Namespace
```

---

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting FontSize Property

Set single font size for all text in the PDF document. Default value: 0.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public int FontSize { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value  
**Int32**

▲ **Remarks** The component will use the same font sizes as in a source document.

## ▲ Example

How to set single font for the PDF document in C#

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
```

[Copy](#)



```

{

    static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Activate your license here
        //
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
        567890");

        // How to set a single font for
        the whole PDF document.
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
        new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

        // Let's make that the all text
        in PDF became in 'Comic Sans MS' font

        p.TextSettings.FontFace.Custom("Comic Sans
        MS");

        // Set also a single font size
        10
        p.TextSettings.FontSize = 10;

        // Set also single text color
        p.TextSettings.FontColor =
        System.Drawing.Color.FromArgb(33, 150, 33);

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
            @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
            Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

            int i =
            p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

```

```

        if (i != 0)
        {
            System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
            during converting RTF to PDF!");
        }
        else
        {
            System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
            System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
            { UseShellExecute = true });
        }
    }
}

```

#### How to set single font for the PDF document in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)

            ' How to set a single font for
the whole PDF document.
            ' Activate your license here
            ,

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

            Dim p As New
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            ' Let's make that the all text

```

in PDF became in 'Comic Sans MS' font

```
p.TextSettings.FontFace.Custom("Comic Sans
MS")

    ' Set also a single font size 10
    p.TextSettings.FontSize = 10

    ' Set also single text color
    p.TextSettings.FontColor =
System.Drawing.Color.FromArgb(33, 150, 33)

    If p IsNot Nothing Then
        Dim rtfPath As String =
"..\\..\\..\\example.rtf"
        Dim pdfPath As String =
"..\\..\\..\\test.pdf"

        Dim i As Integer =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

        If i <> 0 Then

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!")
            Else

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
                End If
            End If
        End Sub
    End Class
End Namespace
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scaling Property

Allows to scale some text properties (the scaling of FontSize and TextWidth appears in future)

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale  
Scaling { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)





[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# TextSetting Methods

The [PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting](#) type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Alignments Class

Set a single text alignment for all text in PDF document. Default option: [Auto](#) .

## ▲ Inheritance Hierarchy **system Object**

[SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Alignments](#)

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax


C#    VB

```
public class Alignments
```

[Copy](#)

The [PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Alignments](#) type exposes the following members.










## ▲ Constructors

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Alignments</a>	Creates an instance of Alignments class.

[Top](#)



## Methods

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Auto</a>	Keep text alignment the same as in a source document.
	<a href="#">Center</a>	Align all text in PDF document by center.
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<a href="#">Justify</a>	Align all text in PDF document by justify.
	<a href="#">Left</a>	Align all text in PDF document by left.
	<a href="#">Right</a>	Align all text in PDF document by right.
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisText SettingAlignments Constructor

Creates an instance of Alignments class.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public Alignments()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisTextSettingAlignments Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)








[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# Alignments Methods

The [PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Alignments](#) type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Auto</a>	Keep text alignment the same as in a source document.
	<a href="#">Center</a>	Align all text in PDF document by center.
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<a href="#">Justify</a>	Align all text in PDF document by justify.
	<a href="#">Left</a>	Align all text in PDF document by left.



## Right

Align all text in PDF document by right.



## ToString

Returns a string that represents the current object.  
(Inherited from **Object**)

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Alignments Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisText SettingAlignmentsAuto Method

Keep text alignment the same as in a source document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Auto()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisTextSettingAlignments Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosisText SettingAlignmentsCenter Method

Align all text in PDF document by center.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Center()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisTextSettingAlignments Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisText SettingAlignmentsJustify Method

Align all text in PDF document by justify.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Justify()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisTextSettingAlignments Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosisText SettingAlignmentsLeft Method

Align all text in PDF document by left.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Left()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisTextSettingAlignments Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisText SettingAlignmentsRight Method

Align all text in PDF document by right.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Right()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisTextSettingAlignments Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting FontFaces Class

Set a single custom font for a whole text in PDF document. Default option: [Auto](#) .

▲ Inheritance Hierarchy `System.Object` `SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.TextSetting` `FontFaces`

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll) Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax


C# VB

```
public class FontFaces
```

[Copy](#)







The `PdfMetamorphosis.TextSetting.FontFaces` type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Constructors






	Name	Description
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosisTextSettingFontFaces</a>	Creates a new instance of the <code>SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.CTextStyle.CFontFace</code> class

[Top](#)

## ▲ Methods

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Auto</a>	Use fonts in PDF the same as in a source document.
	<a href="#">Courier</a>	Make all text in PDF by Courier font.
	<a href="#">Custom</a>	Make all text by a custom font.
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance.

(Inherited from **Object**)

	<a href="#">Helvetica</a>	Make all text in PDF by Helvetica font.
	<a href="#">Symbol</a>	Make all text in PDF by Symbol font.
	<a href="#">TimesNewRoman</a>	Make all text in PDF by "Times New Roman" font.
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<a href="#">ZapfDingbats</a>	Make all text in PDF by Zapf font.

[Top](#)

## ▲ Example

How to set single font for the PDF document in C#

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234567890");

            // How to set a single font for the whole PDF
            document.
                SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p = new
                SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            // Let's make that the all text in PDF became in
            'Comic Sans MS' font
            p.TextSettings.FontFace.Custom("Comic Sans MS");

            // Set also a single font size 10
            p.TextSettings.FontSize = 10;

            // Set also single text color
            p.TextSettings.FontColor =
            System.Drawing.Color.FromArgb(33, 150, 33);

            if (p != null)
            {
                string rtfPath = @"..\..\example.rtf";
```

```

        string pdfPath = Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath,
".pdf");

        int i = p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

        if (i != 0)
        {
            System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!");
        }
        else
        {
            System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath) { UseShellExecute =
true });
        }
    }
}
}
}

```

#### How to set single font for the PDF document in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As String)

            ' How to set a single font for the whole PDF document.
            ' Activate your license here
            ,
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234567890")

            Dim p As New SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            ' Let's make that the all text in PDF became in 'Comic
Sans MS' font
            p.TextSettings.FontFace.Custom("Comic Sans MS")

            ' Set also a single font size 10
            p.TextSettings.FontSize = 10

            ' Set also single text color
            p.TextSettings.FontColor =
System.Drawing.Color.FromArgb(33, 150, 33)

            If p IsNot Nothing Then
                Dim rtfPath As String = "..\..\..\example.rtf"
                Dim pdfPath As String = "..\..\..\test.pdf"

                Dim i As Integer = p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath,
pdfPath)

                If i <> 0 Then

```

```
        System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!")
    Else
        System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath) With
{.UseShellExecute = True})
    End If
End Sub
End Class
End Namespace
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosisText SettingFontFaces Constructor

Creates a new instance of the  
[SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.CTextStyle.CFontFace](#) class

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public FontFaces()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisTextSettingFontFaces Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)








[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)





# FontFaces Methods

The PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting FontFaces type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Auto</a>	Use fonts in PDF the same as in a source document.
	<a href="#">Courier</a>	Make all text in PDF by Courier font.
	<a href="#">Custom</a>	Make all text by a custom font.
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<a href="#">Helvetica</a>	Make all text in PDF by Helvetica font.



	<a href="#">Symbol</a>	Make all text in PDF by Symbol font.
	<a href="#">TimesNewRoman</a>	Make all text in PDF by "Times New Roman" font.
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<a href="#">ZapfDingbats</a>	Make all text in PDF by Zapf font.

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting FontFaces Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting FontFaces Auto Method

Use fonts in PDF the same as in a source document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Auto()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting FontFaces Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosisText SettingFontFacesCourier Method

Make all text in PDF by Courier font.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Courier()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisTextSettingFontFaces Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting FontFaces Custom Method

Make all text by a custom font.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Custom(  
    string nameFont  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

*nameFont* **String**

Name of the custom font

## ▲ Example

How to set single font for the PDF document in C#

```
using System;  
using System.IO;  
using System.Collections;  
  
namespace Sample  
{  
    class Test
```

[Copy](#)

```

{

    static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Activate your license here
        //
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
        567890");

        // How to set a single font for
        the whole PDF document.
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
        new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

        // Let's make that the all text
        in PDF became in 'Comic Sans MS' font

        p.TextSettings.FontFace.Custom("Comic Sans
        MS");

        // Set also a single font size
        10
        p.TextSettings.FontSize = 10;

        // Set also single text color
        p.TextSettings.FontColor =
        System.Drawing.Color.FromArgb(33, 150, 33);

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
            @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
            Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

            int i =
            p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

```

```

        if (i != 0)
        {
            System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
            during converting RTF to PDF!");
        }
        else
        {
            System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
            System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
            { UseShellExecute = true });
        }
    }
}

```

#### How to set single font for the PDF document in VB.Net

[Copy](#)

```

Namespace Sample
    Friend Class Test
        Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As
String)

            ' How to set a single font for
            the whole PDF document.
            ' Activate your license here
            ,

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890")

            Dim p As New
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

            ' Let's make that the all text

```

in PDF became in 'Comic Sans MS' font

```
p.TextSettings.FontFace.Custom("Comic Sans
MS")

    ' Set also a single font size 10
    p.TextSettings.FontSize = 10

    ' Set also single text color
    p.TextSettings.FontColor =
System.Drawing.Color.FromArgb(33, 150, 33)

    If p IsNot Nothing Then
        Dim rtfPath As String =
"..\\..\\..\\example.rtf"
        Dim pdfPath As String =
"..\\..\\..\\test.pdf"

        Dim i As Integer =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

        If i <> 0 Then

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!")
            Else

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
                End If
            End If
        End Sub
    End Class
End Namespace
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting FontFaces Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosisText SettingFontFacesHelvetica Method

Make all text in PDF by Helvetica font.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Helvetica()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisTextSettingFontFaces Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosisText SettingFontFacesSymbol Method

Make all text in PDF by Symbol font.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void Symbol()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisTextSettingFontFaces Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosisText SettingFontFacesTimesNew Roman Method

Make all text in PDF by "Times New Roman" font.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void TimesNewRoman( )
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisTextSettingFontFaces Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosisText SettingFontFacesZapfDingbats Method

Make all text in PDF by Zapf font.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public void ZapfDingbats()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosisTextSettingFontFaces Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale Class

Allows to scale some text properties (the scaling of FontSize and TextWidth appears in future) ▴ **Inheritance**

**Hierarchy** **system Object** **SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale**

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▴ Syntax



C# VB

```
public class Scale
```

[Copy](#)

The PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale type exposes the following members.

## ▴ Properties





	Name	Description
	<a href="#">LineSpacing</a>	Scale the current line spacing in percents. max = 10(1000%), min = 0.1(10%). Default value: 1.
	<a href="#">TextSize</a>	Scale the current text size in percents. max = 10(1000%), min =

0.1(10%). Default value: 1.

---

[Top](#)

## ▲ Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---



[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# Scale Properties

The [PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">LineSpacing</a>	Scale the current line spacing in percents. max = 10(1000%), min = 0.1(10%). Default value: 1.
	<a href="#">TextSize</a>	Scale the current text size in percents. max = 10(1000%), min = 0.1(10%). Default value: 1.

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale LineSpacing Property

Scale the current line spacing in percents. max = 10(1000%), min = 0.1(10%). Default value: 1.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public float LineSpacing { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

single ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



# PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale TextSize Property

Scale the current text size in percents. max = 10(1000%), min = 0.1(10%). Default value: 1.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public float TextSize { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

single ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)





[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# Scale Methods

The [PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale](#) type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis TextSetting Scale Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class

Allows to add watermarks into a produced PDF document ▲

## Inheritance Hierarchy **system Object**

**SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark**

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C# VB

```
public class WaterMark
```

[Copy](#)

The [PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Constructors








	Name	Description
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</a>	Creates an instance of Watermark class.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark(Stream)</a>	Creates an instance of Watermark class.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis</a>	Creates an instance of

WaterMark(String)

Watermark class.

[Top](#)

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Img</a>	<b>Stream</b> object that contains a watermark.
	<a href="#">PosDX</a>	A watermark width. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">PosDY</a>	A watermark height. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">PosX</a>	A watermark position by horizontal from the left-top edge of page. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">PosY</a>	A watermark position by vertical from the left-top edge of page. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">SelectedPages</a>	Gets or sets an array with pages to load (0-based index). Setting <a href="#">SelectedPages</a> properties are overrides <a href="#">SelectedPagesPreset</a> .
	<a href="#">SelectedPagesPreset</a>	On which types of pages place this watermark. Default value: <a href="#">All</a> . Setting <a href="#">SelectedPagesPreset</a>

properties are overrides  
[SelectedPages](#).



## Transparency

Set the transparency for the watermark in percents (0 .. 100).  
Default value: 50.

[Top](#)

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## Remarks

Supported image formats:

- BMP
- GIF
- JPEG

- PNG
- TIFF

## Example

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using C# in memory

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark w1 =
            new
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark(@"..\.\
            .\..\WaterMark.png");
            w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
            w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
            w1.PosDX.Mm = 50;
            w1.PosDY.Mm = 50;

            p.WaterMarks.Add(w1);
```

```

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

            int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

            if (i != 0)
            {
                System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
                during converting RTF to PDF!");
            }
            else
            {
                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
                System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
                { UseShellExecute = true });
            }
        }
    }
}

```

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using VB.Net in memory [Copy](#)

Module sample

```

    Sub Main()
        ' Activate your license here
        ,
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234

```



```
567890")
```

```
    Dim p As New  
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()
```

```
    Dim w1 As New  
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark("..\\..  
    \\..\\WaterMark.png")
```

```
        w1.PosX.Mm = 0  
        w1.PosX.Mm = 0  
        w1.PosDX.Mm = 50  
        w1.PosDY.Mm = 50
```

```
    p.WaterMarks.Add(w1)
```

```
    If p IsNot Nothing Then  
        Dim rtfPath As String =  
        "..\\..\\..\\example.rtf"  
        Dim pdfPath As String =  
        "..\\..\\..\\test.pdf"
```

```
        Dim i As Integer =  
        p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)
```

```
        If i <> 0 Then  
            System.Console.WriteLine("An  
            error occurred during converting RTF to  
            PDF!")
```

```
        Else
```

```
        System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New  
        System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)  
        With {.UseShellExecute = True})
```

```
        End If  
    End If
```

End Sub  
End Module

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---




[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Constructor

## ▲ Overload List

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</a>	Creates an instance of Watermark class.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark(Stream)</a>	Creates an instance of Watermark class.
	<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark(String)</a>	Creates an instance of Watermark class.

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Constructor

Creates an instance of Watermark class.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public WaterMark()
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ Example

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using C# in memory

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
```

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234  
567890");
```

```
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =  
new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();
```

```
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark w1 =  
new  
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark(@"..\.  
..\WaterMark.png");
```

```
    w1.PosX.Mm = 0;  
    w1.PosX.Mm = 0;  
    w1.PosDX.Mm = 50;  
    w1.PosDY.Mm = 50;
```

```
    p.WaterMarks.Add(w1);
```

```
    if (p != null)  
    {  
        string rtfPath =  
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";  
        string pdfPath =  
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");
```

```
        int i =  
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);
```

```
        if (i != 0)  
        {
```

```
System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred  
during converting RTF to PDF!");
```

```
    }  
    else  
    {
```

```

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
    }
}
}
}
}

```

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using VB.Net in memory [Copy](#)

Module sample

```

Sub Main()
    ' Activate your license here
    '
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

    Dim p As New
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

    Dim w1 As New
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark("../\..\
..\WaterMark.png")

    w1.PosX.Mm = 0
    w1.PosX.Mm = 0
    w1.PosDX.Mm = 50
    w1.PosDY.Mm = 50

    p.WaterMarks.Add(w1)

    If p IsNot Nothing Then
        Dim rtfPath As String =
        "../\..\example.rtf"
    End If
End Sub

```

```
        Dim pdfPath As String =  
        "...\\...\\...\\test.pdf"  
  
        Dim i As Integer =  
        p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)  
  
        If i <> 0 Then  
            System.Console.WriteLine("An  
error occurred during converting RTF to  
PDF!")  
        Else  
  
            System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New  
            System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)  
            With {.UseShellExecute = True})  
        End If  
    End If  
End Sub  
End Module
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Overload](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark(Stream) Constructor

Creates an instance of Watermark class.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public WaterMark(  
    Stream img  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

*img* **Stream**

Watermark as object of standard System.Drawing.Image class.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Overload](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)





# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark(String) Constructor

Creates an instance of Watermark class.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public WaterMark(  
    string imagePath  
)
```

[Copy](#)

## Parameters

*imagePath* **String**

Path to a watermark image.

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Overload](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)







[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# WaterMark Properties

The [PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<a href="#">Img</a>	<b>Stream</b> object that contains a watermark.
	<a href="#">PosDX</a>	A watermark width. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">PosDY</a>	A watermark height. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">PosX</a>	A watermark position by horizontal from the left-top edge of page. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">PosY</a>	A watermark position by vertical from the left-top edge of page. Default value: 0.
	<a href="#">SelectedPages</a>	Gets or sets an array with pages to load (0-based index). Setting <a href="#">SelectedPages</a> properties are overrides <a href="#">SelectedPagesPreset</a> .



## [SelectedPagesPreset](#)

On which types of pages place this watermark.  
Default value: [All](#). Setting [SelectedPagesPreset](#) properties overrides [SelectedPages](#).



## [Transparency](#)

Set the transparency for the watermark in percents (0 .. 100).  
Default value: 50.

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Img Property

**Stream** object that contains a watermark.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public Stream Img { set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

## stream ▲ Example

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using C# in memory

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
        }
    }
}
```

```

//
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890");

        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark w1 =
new
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark(@"..\..
..\..\WaterMark.png");
        w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
        w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
        w1.PosDX.Mm = 50;
        w1.PosDY.Mm = 50;

        p.WaterMarks.Add(w1);

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
@"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

            int i =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

            if (i != 0)
            {

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!");
            }
            else
            {

```

```

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
    }
}
}
}
}
}
}

```

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using VB.Net in memory [Copy](#)

**Module** sample

```

    Sub Main()
        ' Activate your license here
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
        567890")

        Dim p As New
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        Dim w1 As New
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark("..\\..
        \\..\\WaterMark.png")

        w1.PosX.Mm = 0
        w1.PosX.Mm = 0
        w1.PosDX.Mm = 50
        w1.PosDY.Mm = 50

        p.WaterMarks.Add(w1)

        If p IsNot Nothing Then
            Dim rtfPath As String =

```

```
"..\..\..\example.rtf"
    Dim pdfPath As String =
"..\..\..\test.pdf"

    Dim i As Integer =
p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

    If i <> 0 Then
        System.Console.WriteLine("An
error occurred during converting RTF to
PDF!")
    Else

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
    End If
    End If
End Sub
End Module
```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)



PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PosDX Property

A watermark width. Default value: 0.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis Sizes PosDX { get;  
set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PosDY Property

A watermark height. Default value: 0.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis Sizes PosDY { get;  
set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PosX Property

A watermark position by horizontal from the left-top edge of page. Default value: 0.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis Sizes PosX { get;  
set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PosY Property

A watermark position by vertical from the left-top edge of page.  
Default value: 0.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public PdfMetamorphosis Sizes PosY { get;  
set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark SelectedPages Property

Gets or sets an array with pages to load (0-based index).  
Setting [SelectedPages](#) properties are overrides  
[SelectedPagesPreset](#).

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public int[] SelectedPages { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value  
**Int32**

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark SelectedPagesPreset Property

On which types of pages place this watermark. Default value: [All](#). Setting [SelectedPagesPreset](#) properties are overrides [SelectedPages](#).

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark  
PagesPreset SelectedPagesPreset { get; set;  
}
```

Property Value

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PagesPreset](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Transparency Property

Set the transparency for the watermark in percents (0 .. 100).  
Default value: 50.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public int Transparency { get; set; }
```

[Copy](#)

Property Value  
**Int32**

▲ **Remarks** 0 - means absolutely invisible, 100% transparent.

## ▲ Example

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using C# in memory

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
```

[Copy](#)

```

class Test
{
    static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Activate your license here
        //
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
        567890");

        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
        new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark w1 =
        new
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark(@"..\.\.
        .\..\WaterMark.png");
        w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
        w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
        w1.PosDX.Mm = 50;
        w1.PosDY.Mm = 50;

        p.WaterMarks.Add(w1);

        if (p != null)
        {
            string rtfPath =
            @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
            string pdfPath =
            Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

            int i =
            p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

            if (i != 0)
            {

```



```

System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
during converting RTF to PDF!");
    }
    else
    {

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
    }
}
}
}
}
}

```

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using VB.Net in memory [Copy](#)

**Module** sample

```

    Sub Main()
        ' Activate your license here
        ,

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

        Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        Dim w1 As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark("..\\..
\\..\\WaterMark.png")

        w1.PosX.Mm = 0
        w1.PosX.Mm = 0
        w1.PosDX.Mm = 50
        w1.PosDY.Mm = 50
    End Sub

```

```

        p.WaterMarks.Add(w1)

        If p IsNot Nothing Then
            Dim rtfPath As String =
                "..\..\..\example.rtf"
            Dim pdfPath As String =
                "..\..\..\test.pdf"

            Dim i As Integer =
                p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

            If i <> 0 Then
                System.Console.WriteLine("An
                error occurred during converting RTF to
                PDF!")
            Else

                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
                System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
                With {.UseShellExecute = True})
            End If
        End If
    End Sub
End Module

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)





SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# WaterMark Methods

The [PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#) type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Equals</b>	Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )

[Top](#)

## See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PagesPreset Enumeration

page types to place watermark.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

```
public enum PagesPreset
```

[Copy](#)

## ▲ Members

Member name	Value	Description
All	0	Place a watermark to all pages.
First	1	Place a watermark only on first page.
AllExceptFirst	2	Place a watermark to all pages except first.
Even	3	Place a watermark to even pages.
Odd	4	Place a watermark to odd pages.

## ▲ See Also

Reference  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarks Collection Class

Allows operate with watermarks in PDF document ▲

**Inheritance Hierarchy** **system Object**  
**System.Collections.Generic List PdfMetamorphosis**  
**WaterMark**  
**SautinSoft PdfMetamorphosis**  
**WaterMarksCollection**

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax


C# VB

[Copy](#)

```
public class WaterMarksCollection :  
List<PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark>
```

The [PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarksCollection](#) type exposes the following members.

## ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<b>Capacity</b>	Gets or sets the total number of elements the internal data structure can hold without resizing.

(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### Count

Gets the number of elements contained in the **List T** .  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### Item

Gets or sets the element at the specified index.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )

[Top](#)

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Add(T)</b>	Adds an object to the end of the <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Add(Stream, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, Int32, PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PagesPreset)</b>	Adds a watermark to PDF document.
	<b>Add(Stream, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,</b>	Adds a watermark to PDF document.



PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
Int32, Int32 )



Add(String,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
Int32, PdfMetamorphosis  
WaterMark PagesPreset)

Adds a watermark to  
PDF document.



Add(String,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
Int32, Int32 )

Adds a watermark to  
PDF document.



**AddRange**

Adds the elements of  
the specified  
collection to the end  
of the **List T** .  
(Inherited from **List**  
[PdfMetamorphosis  
WaterMark](#) )






**AsReadOnly**





Returns a read-only  
**ReadOnlyCollection**  
**T** wrapper for the  
current collection.  
(Inherited from **List**  
[PdfMetamorphosis  
WaterMark](#) )



**BinarySearch(T)**

Searches the entire  
sorted **List T** for an  
element using the  
default comparer and

		returns the zero-based index of the element. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>BinarySearch(T, IComparer T )</b>	Searches the entire sorted <b>List T</b> for an element using the specified comparer and returns the zero-based index of the element. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>BinarySearch(Int32, Int32, T, IComparer T )</b>	Searches a range of elements in the sorted <b>List T</b> for an element using the specified comparer and returns the zero-based index of the element. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Clear</b>	Removes all elements from the <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )

	<b>Contains</b>	Determines whether an element is in the <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>ConvertAll TOutput</b>	Converts the elements in the current <b>List T</b> to another type, and returns a list containing the converted elements. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>CopyTo( T )</b>	Copies the entire <b>List T</b> to a compatible one-dimensional array, starting at the beginning of the target array. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>CopyTo( T , Int32)</b>	Copies the entire <b>List T</b> to a compatible one-dimensional array, starting at the specified index of the target array. (Inherited from <b>List</b>



### CopyTo(Int32, T , Int32, Int32)

Copies a range of elements from the **List T** to a compatible one-dimensional array, starting at the specified index of the target array.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )







### EnsureCapacity

Ensures that the capacity of this list is at least the specified *capacity*. If the current capacity is less than *capacity*, it is successively increased to twice the current capacity until it is at least the specified *capacity*.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### Equals

Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object.  
(Inherited from **Object**)

	<b>Exists</b>	Determines whether the <b>List T</b> contains elements that match the conditions defined by the specified predicate. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Find</b>	Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the first occurrence within the entire <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>FindAll</b>	Retrieves all the elements that match the conditions defined by the specified predicate. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>FindIndex(Predicate T )</b>	Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified

predicate, and returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence within the entire **List T**.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



**FindIndex(Int32, Predicate T )**

Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that extends from the specified index to the last element.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



**FindIndex(Int32, Int32, Predicate T )**

Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence

within the range of elements in the **List T** that starts at the specified index and contains the specified number of elements.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### **FindLast**

Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the last occurrence within the entire **List T** .  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### **FindLastIndex(Predicate T )**

Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence within the entire **List T** .  
(Inherited from **List**



### **FindLastIndex(Int32, Predicate T )**






Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that extends from the first element to the specified index. (Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark )**



### **FindLastIndex(Int32, Int32, Predicate T )**

Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that contains the specified number of elements and ends at the specified index.



		(Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>ForEach</b>	<p>Performs the specified action on each element of the <b>List T</b> .</p> <p>(Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )</p>
	<b>GetEnumerator</b>	<p>Returns an enumerator that iterates through the <b>List T</b> .</p> <p>(Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )</p>
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	<p>Serves as the default hash function.</p> <p>(Inherited from <b>Object</b>)</p>
	<b>GetRange</b>	<p>Creates a shallow copy of a range of elements in the source <b>List T</b> .</p> <p>(Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )</p>
	<b>GetType</b>	<p>Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance.</p> <p>(Inherited from <b>Object</b>)</p>



## IndexOf(T)

Searches for the specified object and returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence within the entire **List T**.

(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## IndexOf(T, Int32)





Searches for the specified object and returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that extends from the specified index to the last element.

(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## IndexOf(T, Int32, Int32)

Searches for the specified object and returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that starts at the specified index and contains the specified number of elements.

		(Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Insert</b>	<p>Inserts an element into the <b>List T</b> at the specified index.</p> <p>(Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )</p>
	<b>InsertRange</b>	<p>Inserts the elements of a collection into the <b>List T</b> at the specified index.</p> <p>(Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )</p>
	<b>LastIndexOf(T)</b>	<p>Searches for the specified object and returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence within the entire <b>List T</b> .</p> <p>(Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )</p>
	<b>LastIndexOf(T, Int32)</b>	<p>Searches for the specified object and returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence within the range of elements in the <b>List</b></p>

**T** that extends from the first element to the specified index. (Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### **LastIndexOf(T, Int32, Int32)**

Searches for the specified object and returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that contains the specified number of elements and ends at the specified index. (Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )








### **Remove**

Removes the first occurrence of a specific object from the **List T** . (Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### **RemoveAll**

Removes all the elements that match the conditions defined by the specified predicate. (Inherited from **List**

	<b>RemoveAt</b>	Removes the element at the specified index of the <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>RemoveRange</b>	Removes a range of elements from the <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Reverse</b>	Reverses the order of the elements in the entire <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Reverse(Int32, Int32)</b>	Reverses the order of the elements in the specified range. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Slice</b>	Creates a shallow copy of a range of elements in the source <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List</b>



## Sort

Sorts the elements in the entire **List T** using the default comparer.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## Sort(Comparison T )

Sorts the elements in the entire **List T** using the specified **Comparison T** .  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## Sort(IComparer T )

Sorts the elements in the entire **List T** using the specified comparer.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )






## Sort(Int32, Int32, IComparer T )

Sorts the elements in a range of elements in **List T** using the specified comparer.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )




## ToArray

Copies the elements of the **List T** to a new array.

		(Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>ToString</b>	Returns a string that represents the current object. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>TrimExcess</b>	Sets the capacity to the actual number of elements in the <b>List T</b> , if that number is less than a threshold value. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>TrueForAll</b>	Determines whether every element in the <b>List T</b> matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )

[Top](#)

## ▲ Explicit Interface Implementations

	Name	Description
	<b>ICollection Add</b>	Adds an item to the <b>ICollection</b> . (Inherited from <b>ICollection</b> )

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)



### **ICollection.Contains**

Determines whether the **ICollection** contains a specific value.  
(Inherited from **ICollection**  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)



### **ICollection.CopyTo**

Copies the elements of the **ICollection** to an **Array**, starting at a particular **Array** index.  
(Inherited from **ICollection**  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)



### **IEnumerator T GetEnumerator**

Returns an enumerator that iterates through a collection.  
(Inherited from **ICollection**  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)



### **IEnumerator GetEnumerator**

Returns an enumerator that iterates through a collection.  
(Inherited from **ICollection**  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)



### **ICollection.IndexOf**







Determines the index of a specific item in the **ICollection**.  
(Inherited from **ICollection**  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)



### **ICollection.Insert**

Inserts an item to the **ICollection** at the specified index.  
(Inherited from **ICollection**)



		<a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</a> )
	<b>IList IsFixedSize</b>	Gets a value indicating whether the <b>IList</b> has a fixed size. (Inherited from <b>List</b> <a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</a> )
	<b>ICollection T IsReadOnly</b>	Gets a value indicating whether the <b>ICollection T</b> is read-only. (Inherited from <b>List</b> <a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</a> )
	<b>IList IsReadOnly</b>	Gets a value indicating whether the <b>IList</b> is read-only. (Inherited from <b>List</b> <a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</a> )
	<b>ICollection IsSynchronized</b>	Gets a value indicating whether access to the <b>ICollection</b> is synchronized (thread safe). (Inherited from <b>List</b> <a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</a> )
	<b>IList Item</b>	Gets or sets the element at the specified index. (Inherited from <b>List</b> <a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</a> )
	<b>IList Remove</b>	Removes the first occurrence

of a specific object from the **IList**.  
(Inherited from **List**  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)



## **ICollection SyncRoot**

Gets an object that can be used to synchronize access to the **ICollection**.  
(Inherited from **List**  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)




Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# WaterMarksCollection

## Properties


The [PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarksCollection](#) type exposes the following members.











### ▲ Properties

	Name	Description
	<b>Capacity</b>	Gets or sets the total number of elements the internal data structure can hold without resizing. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Count</b>	Gets the number of elements contained in the <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Item</b>	Gets or sets the element at the specified index. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )

[Top](#)

### ▲ Explicit Interface Implementations

	Name	Description
	<b>ICollection</b>	Gets a value indicating

	<b>IsFixedSize</b>	whether the <b>ICollection</b> has a fixed size. (Inherited from <b>ICollection</b> <a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</a> )
 	<b>ICollection T IsReadOnly</b>	Gets a value indicating whether the <b>ICollection T</b> is read-only. (Inherited from <b>ICollection</b> <a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</a> )
 	<b>ICollection IsReadOnly</b>	Gets a value indicating whether the <b>ICollection</b> is read-only. (Inherited from <b>ICollection</b> <a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</a> )
 	<b>ICollection IsSynchronized</b>	Gets a value indicating whether access to the <b>ICollection</b> is synchronized (thread safe). (Inherited from <b>ICollection</b> <a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</a> )
 	<b>ICollection Item</b>	Gets or sets the element at the specified index. (Inherited from <b>ICollection</b> <a href="#">PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</a> )
 	<b>ICollection SyncRoot</b>	Gets an object that can be used to synchronize access to the <b>ICollection</b> . (Inherited from <b>ICollection</b> )

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)

---

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarksCollection Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---





[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# WaterMarksCollection Methods

The [PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarksCollection](#) type exposes the following members.

## Methods

	Name	Description
	<b>Add(T)</b>	Adds an object to the end of the <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	Add(Stream, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, Int32, PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PagesPreset)	Adds a watermark to PDF document.
	Add(Stream, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, Int32, Int32 )	Adds a watermark to PDF document.
	Add(String, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,	Adds a watermark to PDF document.

PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
Int32, PdfMetamorphosis  
WaterMark PagesPreset)



Add(String,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
Int32, Int32 )

Adds a watermark to  
PDF document.



**AddRange**

Adds the elements of  
the specified  
collection to the end  
of the **List T** .  
(Inherited from **List**  
[PdfMetamorphosis  
WaterMark](#) )







**AsReadOnly**

Returns a read-only  
**ReadOnlyCollection**  
**T** wrapper for the  
current collection.  
(Inherited from **List**  
[PdfMetamorphosis  
WaterMark](#) )







**BinarySearch(T)**

Searches the entire  
sorted **List T** for an  
element using the  
default comparer and  
returns the zero-  
based index of the  
element.  
(Inherited from **List**  
[PdfMetamorphosis  
WaterMark](#) )

	<b>BinarySearch(T, IComparer T )</b>	Searches the entire sorted <b>List T</b> for an element using the specified comparer and returns the zero-based index of the element. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>BinarySearch(Int32, Int32, T, IComparer T )</b>	Searches a range of elements in the sorted <b>List T</b> for an element using the specified comparer and returns the zero-based index of the element. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Clear</b>	Removes all elements from the <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Contains</b>	Determines whether an element is in the <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )



	<b>ConvertAll TOutput</b>	Converts the elements in the current <b>List T</b> to another type, and returns a list containing the converted elements. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>CopyTo( T )</b>	Copies the entire <b>List T</b> to a compatible one-dimensional array, starting at the beginning of the target array. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>CopyTo( T , Int32)</b>	Copies the entire <b>List T</b> to a compatible one-dimensional array, starting at the specified index of the target array. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>CopyTo(Int32, T , Int32, Int32)</b>	Copies a range of elements from the <b>List T</b> to a compatible one-

dimensional array, starting at the specified index of the target array.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## EnsureCapacity

Ensures that the capacity of this list is at least the specified *capacity*. If the current capacity is less than *capacity*, it is successively increased to twice the current capacity until it is at least the specified *capacity*.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## Equals

Determines whether the specified object is equal to the current object.  
(Inherited from **Object**)



## Exists

Determines whether the **List T** contains elements that match the conditions defined by the specified predicate.  
(Inherited from **List**



## Find

Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the first occurrence within the entire **List T** .  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## FindAll

Retrieves all the elements that match the conditions defined by the specified predicate.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## FindIndex(Predicate T )

Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence within the entire **List T** .  
(Inherited from **List**



**FindIndex(Int32,  
Predicate T )**

Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that extends from the specified index to the last element. (Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark )**



**FindIndex(Int32, Int32,  
Predicate T )**

Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that starts at the specified index and contains the specified number of elements.

(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## **FindLast**

Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the last occurrence within the entire **List T** .  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## **FindLastIndex(Predicate T )**

Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence within the entire **List T** .  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## **FindLastIndex(Int32, Predicate T )**

Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified

predicate, and returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that extends from the first element to the specified index. (Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )








### **FindLastIndex(Int32, Int32, Predicate T )**

Searches for an element that matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate, and returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that contains the specified number of elements and ends at the specified index. (Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### **ForEach**

Performs the specified action on each element of the **List T** .

		(Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>GetEnumerator</b>	Returns an enumerator that iterates through the <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>GetHashCode</b>	Serves as the default hash function. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>GetRange</b>	Creates a shallow copy of a range of elements in the source <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>GetType</b>	Gets the <b>Type</b> of the current instance. (Inherited from <b>Object</b> )
	<b>IndexOf(T)</b>	Searches for the specified object and returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence within the entire <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List</b>



### IndexOf(T, Int32)

Searches for the specified object and returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that extends from the specified index to the last element.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### IndexOf(T, Int32, Int32)

Searches for the specified object and returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that starts at the specified index and contains the specified number of elements.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### Insert

Inserts an element into the **List T** at the specified index.  
(Inherited from **List**





## InsertRange

Inserts the elements of a collection into the **List T** at the specified index.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## LastIndexOf(T)

Searches for the specified object and returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence within the entire **List T** .  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## LastIndexOf(T, Int32)

Searches for the specified object and returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that extends from the first element to the specified index.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



## LastIndexOf(T, Int32,

Searches for the

**Int32)**

specified object and returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence within the range of elements in the **List T** that contains the specified number of elements and ends at the specified index.

(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



**Remove**

Removes the first occurrence of a specific object from the **List T** .

(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



**RemoveAll**

Removes all the elements that match the conditions defined by the specified predicate.






(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



**RemoveAt**

Removes the element at the specified index of the **List T** .

(Inherited from **List**

	<b>RemoveRange</b>	Removes a range of elements from the <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Reverse</b>	Reverses the order of the elements in the entire <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Reverse(Int32, Int32)</b>	Reverses the order of the elements in the specified range. (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Slice</b>	Creates a shallow copy of a range of elements in the source <b>List T</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>Sort</b>	Sorts the elements in the entire <b>List T</b> using the default comparer. (Inherited from <b>List</b>



### Sort(Comparison T )

Sorts the elements in the entire **List T** using the specified **Comparison T** .  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### Sort(IComparer T )

Sorts the elements in the entire **List T** using the specified comparer.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### Sort(Int32, Int32, IComparer T )

Sorts the elements in a range of elements in **List T** using the specified comparer.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### ToArray

Copies the elements of the **List T** to a new array.  
(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark** )



### ToString

Returns a string that represents the current object.

(Inherited from **Object**)



### TrimExcess

Sets the capacity to the actual number of elements in the **List T**, if that number is less than a threshold value.

(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark**)



### TrueForAll

Determines whether every element in the **List T** matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate.

(Inherited from **List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark**)

[Top](#)

## ▲ Explicit Interface Implementations

	Name	Description
	<b>IList Add</b>	Adds an item to the <b>IList</b> . (Inherited from <b>List PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark</b> )
	<b>IList Contains</b>	Determines whether the <b>IList</b> contains a specific value. (Inherited from <b>List</b> )

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)



### **ICollection CopyTo**

Copies the elements of the **ICollection** to an **Array**, starting at a particular **Array** index.  
(Inherited from **List**  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)



### **IEnumerable T GetEnumerator**

Returns an enumerator that iterates through a collection.  
(Inherited from **List**  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)



### **IEnumerable GetEnumerator**

Returns an enumerator that iterates through a collection.  
(Inherited from **List**  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)



### **ICollection IndexOf**

Determines the index of a specific item in the **ICollection**.  
(Inherited from **List**  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)



### **ICollection Insert**

Inserts an item to the **ICollection** at the specified index.  
(Inherited from **List**  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)



### **ICollection Remove**

Removes the first occurrence of a specific object from the **ICollection**.

(Inherited from **List**  
[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)  
)

---

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarksCollection Class](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)





---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarks Collection Add Method

## ▲ Overload List

	Name	Description
	<b>Add(T)</b>	Adds an object to the end of the <b>List T</b> .
	Add(Stream, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, Int32, PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PagesPreset)	Adds a watermark to PDF document.
	Add(Stream, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, Int32, Int32 )	Adds a watermark to PDF document.
	Add(String, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, Int32, PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PagesPreset)	Adds a watermark to PDF document.





Add(String, PdfMetamorphosis  
Sizes, PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes,  
PdfMetamorphosis Sizes, Int32,  
Int32 )

Adds a  
watermark  
to PDF  
document.

---

[Top](#)

## ▲ See Also

Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarksCollection Class](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

[SautinSoft 2002 - 2024](#)

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Collection Add(Stream, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Int32, PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PagesPreset) Method

Adds a watermark to PDF document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Add(  
    Stream img,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes x = null,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes y = null,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes width = null,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes height =  
    null,  
    int transparency = 50,
```

```
PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark  
PagesPreset selectedPagesPreset =  
PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PagesPreset.All  
)
```

## Parameters

### *img* **Stream**

Watermark as System.Drawing.Image object.

*x* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark position by horizontal from the left-top edge of page.

*y* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark position by vertical from the left-top edge of page.

*width* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark width.

*height* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark height.

*transparency* **Int32** (Optional)

Transparency in percents. 0 - invisible.

*selectedPagesPreset* [PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PagesPreset](#) (Optional)

On which types of pages place this watermark.

## Return Value

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)

Reference to the just added watermark.

## ▲ Example

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using C# in memory

[Copy](#)

```
using System;  
using System.IO;  
using System.Collections;
```

```

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark w1 =
            new
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark(@"..\.\
            ..\WaterMark.png");
            w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
            w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
            w1.PosDX.Mm = 50;
            w1.PosDY.Mm = 50;

            p.WaterMarks.Add(w1);

            if (p != null)
            {
                string rtfPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

                int i =
                p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

        if (i != 0)
        {
            System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
            during converting RTF to PDF!");
        }
        else
        {
            System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
            System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
            { UseShellExecute = true });
        }
    }
}
}
}

```

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using VB.Net in memory

[Copy](#)

Module sample

```

Sub Main()
    ' Activate your license here
    '
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
    567890")

    Dim p As New
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

    Dim w1 As New
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark("..\\..
    \\..\\WaterMark.png")

    w1.PosX.Mm = 0

```

```

w1.PosX.Mm = 0
w1.PosDX.Mm = 50
w1.PosDY.Mm = 50

p.WaterMarks.Add(w1)

If p IsNot Nothing Then
    Dim rtfPath As String =
        "..\..\..\example.rtf"
    Dim pdfPath As String =
        "..\..\..\test.pdf"

    Dim i As Integer =
        p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

    If i <> 0 Then
        System.Console.WriteLine("An
error occurred during converting RTF to
PDF!")
    Else

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
    End If
    End If
End Sub
End Module

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarksCollection Class](#)

[Add Overload](#)

[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Collection Add(Stream, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Int32, Int32 ) Method

Adds a watermark to PDF document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Add(  
    Stream img,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes x = null,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes y = null,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes width = null,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes height =  
    null,  
    int transparency = 50,  
    int[] selectedPages = null  
)
```



## Parameters

### *img* **Stream**

Watermark as stream object.

*x* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark position by horizontal from the left-top edge of page.

*y* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark position by vertical from the left-top edge of page.

*width* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark width.

*height* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark height.

*transparency* **Int32** (Optional)

Transparency in percents. 0 - invisible.

*selectedPages* **Int32** (Optional)

Place this watermark only on these pages.

## Return Value

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)

Reference to the just added watermark.

## ▲ Example

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using C# in memory

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
```

```

        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark w1 =
            new
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark(@"..\
            .\..\WaterMark.png");
            w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
            w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
            w1.PosDX.Mm = 50;
            w1.PosDY.Mm = 50;

            p.WaterMarks.Add(w1);

            if (p != null)
            {
                string rtfPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

                int i =
                p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

                if (i != 0)
                {

                    System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred

```

```

during converting RTF to PDF!");
        }
        else
        {

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
{ UseShellExecute = true });
        }
    }
}
}
}

```

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using VB.Net in memory [Copy](#)

**Module** sample

```

    Sub Main()
        ' Activate your license here
        ,

SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
567890")

        Dim p As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        Dim w1 As New
SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark("../\..\
..\WaterMark.png")

        w1.PosX.Mm = 0
        w1.PosX.Mm = 0
        w1.PosDX.Mm = 50
        w1.PosDY.Mm = 50

        p.WaterMarks.Add(w1)
    End Sub

```

```

        If p IsNot Nothing Then
            Dim rtfPath As String =
                "...\\...\\...\\example.rtf"
            Dim pdfPath As String =
                "...\\...\\...\\test.pdf"

            Dim i As Integer =
                p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

            If i <> 0 Then
                System.Console.WriteLine("An
                error occurred during converting RTF to
                PDF!")
            Else

                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
                System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
                With {.UseShellExecute = True})
            End If
        End If
    End Sub
End Module

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarksCollection Class](#)  
[Add Overload](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarks Collection Add(String, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Int32, PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PagesPreset) Method

Adds a watermark to PDF document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Add(  
    string imagePath,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes x = null,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes y = null,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes width = null,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes height =  
    null,  
    int transparency = 50,
```

```
PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark
PagesPreset selectedPagesPreset =
PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PagesPreset.All
)
```

## Parameters

### *imagePath* **String**

Path to image for watermark.

*x* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark position by horizontal from the left-top edge of page.

*y* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark position by vertical from the left-top edge of page.

*width* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark width.

*height* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark height.

*transparency* **Int32** (Optional)

Transparency in percents. 0 - invisible.

*selectedPagesPreset* [PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark PagesPreset](#) (Optional)

On which types of pages place this watermark.

## Return Value

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)

Reference to the just added watermark.

## ▲ Example

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using C# in memory

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;
```

```

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark w1 =
            new
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark(@"..\..
            .\..\WaterMark.png");
            w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
            w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
            w1.PosDX.Mm = 50;
            w1.PosDY.Mm = 50;

            p.WaterMarks.Add(w1);

            if (p != null)
            {
                string rtfPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

                int i =
                p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

        if (i != 0)
        {
            System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred
            during converting RTF to PDF!");
        }
        else
        {
            System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
            System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
            { UseShellExecute = true });
        }
    }
}
}
}

```

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using VB.Net in memory

[Copy](#)

Module sample

```

Sub Main()
    ' Activate your license here
    '
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
    567890")

    Dim p As New
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

    Dim w1 As New
    SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark("..\\..
    \\..\\WaterMark.png")

    w1.PosX.Mm = 0

```



```

w1.PosX.Mm = 0
w1.PosDX.Mm = 50
w1.PosDY.Mm = 50

p.WaterMarks.Add(w1)

If p IsNot Nothing Then
    Dim rtfPath As String =
        "..\..\..\example.rtf"
    Dim pdfPath As String =
        "..\..\..\test.pdf"

    Dim i As Integer =
        p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

    If i <> 0 Then
        System.Console.WriteLine("An
error occurred during converting RTF to
PDF!")
    Else

System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
With {.UseShellExecute = True})
    End If
    End If
End Sub
End Module

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarksCollection Class](#)  
[Add Overload](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

---

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)

PDF Metamorphosis .Net is a component to convert DOC, DOCX, RTF, Text, HTML to PDF.

# PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarks Collection Add(String, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Pdf Metamorphosis Sizes, Int32, Int 32 ) Method

Adds a watermark to PDF document.

**Namespace:** [SautinSoft](#)

**Assembly:** PdfMetamorphosis (in PdfMetamorphosis.dll)

Version: 2024.1.12

## ▲ Syntax

C#    VB

[Copy](#)

```
public PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark Add(  
    string imagePath,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes x = null,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes y = null,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes width = null,  
    PdfMetamorphosis Sizes height =  
    null,  
    int transparency = 50,  
    int[] pageNum = null  
)
```

## Parameters

### *imagePath* **String**

Path to image for watermark.

### *x* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark position by horizontal from the left-top edge of page.

### *y* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark position by vertical from the left-top edge of page.

### *width* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark width.

### *height* [PdfMetamorphosis Sizes](#) (Optional)

A watermark height.

### *transparency* **Int32** (Optional)

Transparency in percents. 0 - invisible.

### *pageNum* **Int32** (Optional)

Place this watermark only on these pages.

## Return Value

### [PdfMetamorphosis WaterMark](#)

Reference to the just added watermark.

## ▲ Example

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using C# in memory

[Copy](#)

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections;

namespace Sample
{
    class Test
    {
```

```

        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Activate your license here
            //
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
            567890");

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis p =
            new SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis();

            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark w1 =
            new
            SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark(@"..\
            .\..\WaterMark.png");
            w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
            w1.PosX.Mm = 0;
            w1.PosDX.Mm = 50;
            w1.PosDY.Mm = 50;

            p.WaterMarks.Add(w1);

            if (p != null)
            {
                string rtfPath =
                @"..\..\..\example.rtf";
                string pdfPath =
                Path.ChangeExtension(rtfPath, ".pdf");

                int i =
                p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath);

                if (i != 0)
                {

                    System.Console.WriteLine("An error occurred

```

```

during converting RTF to PDF!");
    }
    else
    {
        System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(new
        System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
        { UseShellExecute = true });
    }
}
}
}
}
}
}
}

```

How to add Watermarks into a produced PDF document using VB.Net in memory [Copy](#)

**Module** sample

```

    Sub Main()
        ' Activate your license here
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.SetLicense("1234
        567890")

        Dim p As New
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis()

        Dim w1 As New
        SautinSoft.PdfMetamorphosis.WaterMark("../\..\
        \..\WaterMark.png")

        w1.PosX.Mm = 0
        w1.PosX.Mm = 0
        w1.PosDX.Mm = 50
        w1.PosDY.Mm = 50

        p.WaterMarks.Add(w1)
    
```

```

        If p IsNot Nothing Then
            Dim rtfPath As String =
                "...\\...\\...\\example.rtf"
            Dim pdfPath As String =
                "...\\...\\...\\test.pdf"

            Dim i As Integer =
                p.RtfToPdfConvertFile(rtfPath, pdfPath)

            If i <> 0 Then
                System.Console.WriteLine("An
                error occurred during converting RTF to
                PDF!")
            Else

                System.Diagnostics.Process.Start(New
                System.Diagnostics.ProcessStartInfo(pdfPath)
                With {.UseShellExecute = True})
            End If
        End If
    End Sub
End Module

```

## ▲ See Also

### Reference

[PdfMetamorphosis WaterMarksCollection Class](#)  
[Add Overload](#)  
[SautinSoft Namespace](#)

SautinSoft 2002 - 2024

Send comments on this topic to [support@sautinsoft.com](mailto:support@sautinsoft.com)